k 028/6

Minna no Nihongo I

の心心のの話目本語

# 初級I翻訳·文法解説英語版

**Translation & Grammatical Notes** 



# Minna no Nihongo I

# みんなの日本語

初級I翻訳·文法解説 英語版

**Translation & Grammatical Notes** 

# Minna no Nihongo I

# みんなの日本語

# 初級I翻訳·文法解説 英語版

Translation & Grammatical Notes



スリーエーネットワーク

#### © 1998 by 3A Corporation

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publisher.

Published by 3A Corporation Shoei Bldg., 6-3, Sarugaku-cho 2-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 101-0064, Japan

ISBN4-88319-107-9 C0081

First published 1998 Printed in Japan

#### **FOREWORD**

As the title *Minna no Nihongo* indicates, this book has been designed to make the study of Japanese as enjoyable and interesting as possible for students and teachers alike. Over three years in the planning and compilation, it stands as a complete textbook in itself while acting as a companion volume to the highly regarded *Shin Nihongo no Kiso*.

As readers may know, **Shin Nihongo no Kiso** is a comprehensive introduction to elementary Japanese that serves as a highly efficient resource enabling students wishing to master basic Japanese conversation to do so in the shortest possible time. As such, although it was originally developed for use by AOTS's technical trainees, it is now used by a wide range of people both in Japan and abroad.

The teaching of Japanese is branching out in many different ways. Japanese economic and industrial growth has led to a greater level of interchange between Japan and other countries, and non-Japanese from a wide variety of backgrounds have come to Japan with a range of different objectives and are now living within local communities here. The changes in the social milieu surrounding the teaching of Japanese that have resulted from this influx of people from other countries have in turn influenced the individual situations in which Japanese is taught. There is now a greater diversity of learning needs, and they require individual responses.

It is against this background, and in response to the opinions and hopes expressed by a large number of people who have been involved in the teaching of Japanese for many years both in Japan and elsewhere, that 3A Corporation proudly publishes *Minna no Nihongo*. While the book continues to make use of the clarity and ease of understanding provided by the special features, key learning points and learning methods of *Shin Nihongo no Kiso*, the scenes, situations and characters in *Minna no Nihongo* have been made more universal in order to appeal to a wider range of learners. Its contents have been enhanced in this way to allow all kinds of students to use it for studying Japanese with pleasure.

Minna no Nihongo is aimed at anyone who urgently needs to learn to communicate in Japanese in any situation, whether at work, school, college or in their local community. Although it is an introductory text, efforts have been made to make the exchanges between Japanese and foreign characters in the book reflect Japanese

social conditions and everyday life as faithfully as possible. While it is intended principally for those who have already left full-time education, it can also be recommended as an excellent textbook for university entrance courses as well as short-term intensive courses at technical colleges and universities.

We at 3A Corporation are continuing actively to produce new study materials designed to meet the individual needs of an increasingly wide range of learners, and we sincerely hope that readers will continue to give us their valued support.

In conclusion, I should like to mention the extensive help we received in the preparation of this text, in the form of suggestions and comments from various quarters and trials of the materials in actual lessons, for which we are extremely grateful. 3A Corporation intends to continue extending its network of friendship all over the world through activities such as the publishing of Japanese study materials, and we hope that everyone who knows us will continue to lend us their unstinting encouragement and support in this.

Iwao Ogawa President, 3A Corporation March 1998

#### **EXPLANATORY NOTES**

#### I. Structure

The learning materials consist of a Main Text, a Translation and Grammar Text and a set of cassette tapes. The Translation and Grammar Text is currently available in English. Versions in other languages will be published shortly.

The materials have been prepared with the main emphasis on listening and speaking Japanese; they do not provide instruction in reading and writing hiragana, katakana or kanji.

#### II. Content and Method of Use

#### 1. Main Text

#### 1) Japanese Pronunciation

This section gives examples of the main characteristics of Japanese pronunciation.

#### 2) Classroom instructions, greetings, numerals

These are useful for understanding classroom instructions and daily greetings. They are frequently used by teachers in class.

#### 3) Lessons

There are 25 lessons, and each contains the following:

#### Sentence Patterns

Basic sentence patterns are shown in the order they appear.

#### ② Example Sentences

A small dialogue in the style of a question and answer is given to show how the sentence patterns are used in practical conversation. New adverbs, conjunctions, and other grammatical points are also introduced.

#### ③ Conversation

In the conversations, various foreign people staying in Japan appear in a variety of situations. The conversations include everyday expressions and greetings. As they are simple, learning them by heart is recommended. If time allows, students should try developing the conversation by applying the reference words given in each lesson of the Translation and Grammar Text in order to maximize their communication skills.

#### 4 Drills

The drills are divided into three levels: A, B, and C.

Drill A is visually designed in chart style to help understanding of the grammatical structure. The style helps students to learn systematically the basic sentence patterns through substitution drills, and applying verb forms and conjugations following the chart.

Drill B has various drill patterns to strengthen students' grasp of the basic sentence patterns. Follow the directions given in each practice. Drills marked with a er sign use pictorial charts.

Drill C is given in discourse style to show how the sentence patterns function in actual situations, and to enhance practical oral skills. Do not simply read, repeat and substitute, but try making your own substitution, enrich the content, and develop the story.

#### (5) Practice

Two kinds of practices are given: one type for listening ( ) and the other for grammar practice.

The listening practice is further divided into a question asking for a personal answer, and a question confirming the key point of the given discourse. The listening practices are designed to strengthen students' aural skills, while the grammar practices check comprehension of vocabulary and the grammar points in the lessons studied.

The reading practices mostly require students to give a true or false response after reading a simple story compiled with words and sentence patterns from the lessons learned.

#### 6 Review

This is provided to enable students to go over the essential points every several lessons studied.

#### ③ Summary

At the end of the Main Text, a summary of grammatical points is given, such as the use of the particles, verb forms, adverbs and conjunctions, using example sentences appearing in the respective lessons.

#### ® Index

This includes classroom instructions, greetings, numerals, new

vocabulary, and idiomatic expressions introduced in each lesson of the Main Text.

#### 2. Translation and Grammar Text

- 1) Explanations of the general features and pronunciation of Japanese as well as the Japanese writing system
- 2) Translation of classroom instructions and greetings in the Main Text
- 3) The following are given in each of the 25 lessons.
  - new vocabulary and its translation
  - ② translation of Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, and Conversation
  - 3 useful words related to the lesson and small pieces of information on Japan and the Japanese
  - (4) explanation of essential grammar appearing in the lesson
- 4) Translation of the particles, how to use the forms, adverbs and adverbial expressions, and various conjugations found at the back of the Main Text
- 5) Tables showing how to express numbers, time, periods of time, and counters, etc. including items which the textbook does not cover

#### 3. Cassette Tapes

On the cassette tapes, Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, Drill C, Conversation and listening comprehension questions of the Practice section are recorded.

Students should pay attention to the pronunciation and intonation when listening to the Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns and Example Sentences. When listening to Drill C and Conversation, try to get accustomed to the natural speed of the language.

#### 4. Kanji Usage

- 1) Kanji usage is based on 常用漢字表, which is an official list of the most commonly used Chinese characters in Japan.
  - ① 熟字訓 (words which are made by a combination of two or more kanji and have a special reading) shown in the Appendix Chart of 常用漢字表

are written in kanji.

e.g. 友達 friend 果物 fruit 眼鏡 glasses

② Proper nouns are written with their own Chinese characters even if their readings are non-standard.

e.g. 大阪 Osaka 奈良 Nara 歌舞伎 Kabuki

2) For freeing students from confusion, some words are given in kana although they are included in 常用漢字表 and its Appendix Chart.

e.g. ある(有る possess・在る exist) たぶん (多分) perhaps きのう(昨日) yesterday

3) Numbers are principally shown in Arabic numerals.

e.g. 9時 9 o'clock 4月1日 1st April 1つ one (thing)

However kanji is used in the following cases.

e.g. 一人で by oneself 一度 one time 一方円礼 ten thousand yen bill

#### 5. Miscellaneous

1) Words which can be omitted from a sentence are enclosed in square brackets [ ].

e.g. 交は 54[歳]です。 My father is 54 years old.

2) Synonyms are enclosed in round brackets ( ).

e.g. だれ (どなた) who

3) The part for an alternative word is denoted by  $\sim$ .

e.g. ~はいかがですか。 How would you like ~?

If the alternative part is a numeral, - is used.

e.g. - 歳 - years old - 荊 - yen - 時間 - hours

#### TO USERS OF THIS TEXTBOOK

The most effective way to study

#### 1. Learn each word carefully.

The *Translation & Grammatical Notes* introduces the new words for each lesson. First, listen to the tape and learn these words thoroughly, paying special attention to the correct pronunciation and accent. Try to make sentences with the new words. It is important to memorize not only a word itself, but its use in a sentence.

#### 2. Practice the sentence patterns.

Make sure you understand the meaning of each sentence pattern, and do Drills A and B until you have mastered the pattern. Say the sentences aloud, especially when doing Drill B.

#### Practice the conversation drills.

Sentence-pattern practice is followed by conversation practice. The example conversations show the various situations in actual daily life in which people from abroad will often need to use Japanese. Start by doing *Drill C* to get accustomed to the pattern. Don't practice only the dialogue pattern, but try to expand the dialogue. And learn how to communicate suitably according to the situations by practicing the conversation.

#### 4. Listen to the cassette tape repeatedly.

When practicing *Drill C* and *Conversation*, listen to the tape and say the dialogue aloud to make sure you acquire the correct pronunciation and intonation. Listening to the tape is the most effective way to get used to the sound and speed of Japanese and to improve your listening ability.

#### Always remember to review and prepare.

So as not to forget what you have learned in class, always review it the same day. Finally, do the questions at the end of each lesson in order to check what you have learnt and to test your listening comprehension. And, if you have time, look through the words and grammar explanation for the next lesson. Basic preparation is necessary for effective study.

#### 6. Use what you have learnt.

Don't limit your learning to the classroom. Try to talk to Japanese people. Using what you have just learnt is the best way to progress.

If you complete this textbook following the above suggestions, you will have acquired the basic vocabulary and expressions necessary for daily life in Japan.

# **CHARACTERS IN THE CONVERSATIONS**



Mike Miller American, employee of IMC



Sato Keiko Japanese, employee of IMC



Jose Santos Brazilian, employee of Brazil Air



Maria Santos Brazilian, housewife



Karina Indonesian etudent et E



Indonesian, student at Fuji University Chinese, doctor at Kobe Hospital



Yamada Ichiro Japanese, employee of IMC



Yamada Tomoko Japanese, bank clerk



Japanese, department chief at IMC



Matsumoto Yoshiko Japanese, housewife



Kimura Izumi Japanese, announcer

## Other Characters-



British, professor at Sakura University



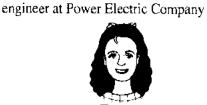
Schmidt

German,



Korean,

research worker at AKC



Teresa

Brazilian, schoolgirl (9 yrs.), daughter of Jose & Maria Santos



Taro

Japanese, schoolboy (8 yrs.), son of Ichiro & Tomoko Yamada.



Gupta

Indian, employee of IMC



Thawaphon

Thai, student at Japanese language school

※IMC (computer software company) ※AKC (アジア研究センター: Asia Research Institute)

# **CONTENTS**

II. Japanese Script III.Pronunciation of Japanese  PRELIMINARY LESSON  I. Pronunciation II. Classroom Instructions III.Daily Greetings and Expressions IV.Numerals  TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION  ABBREVIATIONS  LESSON 1  I. Vocabulary	INTRODUCTION	······2
HILPronunciation of Japanese  PRELIMINARY LESSON  I. Pronunciation  II. Classroom Instructions  III.Daily Greetings and Expressions  IV.Numerals  TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION  ABBREVIATIONS  LESSON 1  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  IV.Grammar Explanation  5. Niの Ni  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  LESSON 2  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  IV.Grammar Explanation  1. これ/それ/あれ  2. この N/その N/あの N  3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません  This is just a token  4. Siか、Siか、Siか	I. General Features of Japanese	
RELIMINARY LESSON I. Pronunciation II. Classroom Instructions III.Daily Greetings and Expressions IV.Numerals  TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION  ABBREVIATIONS  LESSON 1 I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: How do you do? III.Reference Words & Information: COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE III. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation:  LESSON 2 I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: A Nも IV.Grammar Explanation I. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません I. This is just a token III. Translation A Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: A Sentence Patterns & Example Sentence	II. Japanese Script	•
I. Pronunciation  II. Classroom Instructions  III.Daily Greetings and Expressions  IV.Numerals  TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION  ABBREVIATIONS  LESSON 1  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  II. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  II. Vocabulary  IV. Grammar Explanation  5. N₁の N₂  6. ~ さん  LESSON 2  I. Vocabulary  IV. Grammar Explanation  1. これ/それ/あれ  2. この N/その N/あの N  3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません  This is just a token  4. S₁か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂か、S₂	III.Pronunciation of Japanese	
TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION  ABBREVIATIONS  LESSON 1  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  II. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  This is just a token  IV. Grammar Explanation  1. これ/それ/あれ  2. この N/その N/あの N  3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません  4. Siか、Siか、Siか	I. Pronunciation II. Classroom Instructions III.Daily Greetings and Expressions	8
LESSON 1   IV.Grammar Explanation   1. Niは Noです   2. Niは Noじゃ ありません   Conversation:   3. Sか   4. Nも   III.Reference Words & Information:   COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE   Conversation:   IV.Grammar Explanation   1. Niは Noじゃ ありません   S. Niの Nouth Note   S. Nion Nouth Nouth Note   S. Nion Nouth		10
LESSON 1  I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: How do you do? III.Reference Words & Information: COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE II. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  IV. Grammar Explanation IV. Grammar Explanatio		
I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: How do you do? How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information: COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  IV.Grammar Explanation I. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	ABBREVIATIONS	11
II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation:  How do you do?  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  I. Vocabulary  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation:  Conversation:  This is just a token  1. Niは N₂です  2. Niは N₂じゃ ありません  3. Sか  4. N も  5. Niの N₂  6. ~さん  IV. Grammar Explanation 1. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	LESSON 1 ·····	12
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation:  How do you do?  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information: COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  2. N:は No じゃ ありません 3. Sか 4. N も 5. Niの No 5. Niの No 5. Niの No 6. ~さん  IV. Grammar Explanation 1. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
Conversation:  How do you do?  How do you do?  III.Reference Words & Information:  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE  I. Vocabulary  I. Vocabulary  II. Translation  Scntence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  This is just a token  3. Sか  4. N も  4. N も  5. N₁の N₂  6. ~さん  IV.Grammar Explanation  1. これ/それ/あれ  2. この N/その N/あの N  3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません  4. S₁か、S₂か	II. Translation	1. N₁は N₂です
How do you do? 4. Nも III.Reference Words & Information: 5. Niの N2 COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE 6. ~さん  LESSON 2 I. Vocabulary IV.Grammar Explanation II. Translation 1. これ/それ/あれ Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences 2. この N/その N/あの N Conversation: 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません This is just a token 4. Siか、Siか	Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. N:は N₂じゃ ありません
III.Reference Words & Information: 5. Niの N2 COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE 6. ~さん  LESSON 2  I. Vocabulary IV.Grammar Explanation II. Translation 1. これ/それ/あれ Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences 2. この N/その N/あの N Conversation: 3.そうです/そうじゃ ありません This is just a token 4. Siか、Siか	Conversation:	3. Sか
COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE 6. ~さん  LESSON 2  I. Vocabulary II. Translation Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE 6. ~さん  IV.Grammar Explanation 1. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	How do you do?	4. N &
LESSON 2  I. Vocabulary II. Translation Scntence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  IV. Grammar Explanation 1. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	III.Reference Words & Information:	5. N₁Ø N₂
I. Vocabulary II. Translation Scntence Patterns & Example Sentences Conversation: This is just a token  IV. Grammar Explanation 1. これ/それ/あれ 2. この N/その N/あの N 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません 4. Siか、Siか	COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE	6. ~さん
II. Translation  Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences  Conversation:  This is just a token  1. これ/それ/あれ  2. この N/その N/あの N  3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません  4. Siか、Siか	LESSON 2	18
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences 2、この N/その N/あの N Conversation: 3、そうです/そうじゃ ありません This is just a token 4、Siか、Siか	I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
Conversation: 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません This is just a token 4. Siか、Siか	II. Translation	1. これ/それ/あれ
This is just a token 4. $S_1 \hat{\sigma}$ , $S_2 \hat{\sigma}$	Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. この N/その N/あの N
	Conversation:	3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません
	This is just a token	4. S <sub>1</sub> φ', S <sub>2</sub> φ'
III.Reference Words & Information: 5. No No No	HLReference Words & Information:	5. N <sub>1</sub> O N <sub>2</sub>
and the second of the second o	FAMILY NAMES	6. そうですか

IV.Grammar Explanation
1. ここ/そこ/あそこ/こちら/
そちら/あちら
2. N₁(1 N₂ (place)です
3. どこ/どちら
4. N <sub>1</sub> O N <sub>2</sub>
5. The こ/そ/あ/ど system of
demonstrative words
6. お国
30
IV.Grammar Explanation
1.今 - 時 - 分です
2. V ± 寸
3. Vます/Vません/Vました/
Vませんでした
4. N (time) 15 V
5. N₁から N₂まで
6. N <sub>1</sub> & N <sub>2</sub>
7. S <b>ź</b> 1
36
IV.Grammar Explanation
1. N (place)へ 行きます/来ます/
帰ります
2.どこ[へ]も 行きません/
行きませんでした
3. N (vchicle)で 行きます/来ます/
帰ります
4. N (person/animal) ∠ V
5.110
6. S.L

LESSON 3 -----24

LESSON 6  I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
11. Translation	1. N & V (transitive)
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Nを します
Conversation:	3.何を しますか
Won't you join us?	4. なん and なに
III.Reference Words & Information:	5. N (place)で V
FOOD	6. Vませんか
	<b>7. ∨</b> ましょう
	8. お~
LESSON 7	48
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. N (tool/means) C V
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. "Word/Sentence"は ~語で
Conversation:	何ですか
Hello	3. N (person)に あげます, etc.
III.Reference Words & Information:	4. N (person)に もらいます, etc.
FAMILY	5. もう <b>v</b> ました
LESSON 8	54
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. Adjectives
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Nは な-adj [な] です
Conversation:	N(1 い-adj (~い) です
It's almost time to leave	3. な-adj な N
III.Reference Words & Information:	い-adj (~い) N
COLOR & TASTE	4. とても/あまり
	5.Nは どうですか
	6. N₁は どんな N₁ですか
	7. S <sub>1</sub> が、S <sub>2</sub>
	8. どれ

1. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1.Nが あります/わかります
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	f 3.0
Conversation:	上手です/下手です
That's too bad	2. どんな N
III.Reference Words & Information:	3. よく/だいたい/たくさん/少し/
MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES	あまり/全然
	4. Siから、S2
	5. どうして
LESSON 10	66
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. Nが あります/います
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	
Conversation:	3. N. は N <sub>2</sub> (place)に あります/います
Do you have chili sauce in this store?	4. N <sub>1</sub> (thing/person/place) $\mathcal{O}$ N <sub>2</sub> (position)
III.Reference Words & Information:	5. N <sub>1</sub> + N <sub>2</sub>
INSIDE THE HOUSE	6. Word (s)ですか
	7. チリソースは ありませんか
LESSON 11	72
1. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. Saying numbers
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Quantifier (period) □ - □ V
Conversation:	3. Quantifier £1 / N£1
Please send this by sea mail	
III.Reference Words & Information:	
MENU	
LESSON 12	78
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	Past tense of noun sentences and
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	tr-adjective sentences
Conversation:	2. Past tense of V-adjective sentences
How was the Festival?	3. Not No. 1 1) adjective Tf
III.Reference Words & Information:	4. N₁と N₂と どちらが adjective ですか
FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE	"N <sub>1</sub> /N <sub>2</sub> O (1) M adjective T
	5. N <sub>1</sub> [の中]で 何/どこ/だれ/
	いつが いちばん adjectiveですか
	…N₂がいちばん adjectiveです
	· ·

LESSON 13	84
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II, Translation	1. Nが 欲しいです
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Vます-form たいです
Conversation:	3. $N \text{ (place)} \land \begin{cases} V \not\equiv f\text{-form} \\ N \end{cases} t z$
Charge us separately	
III.Reference Words & Information:	行きます/来ます/帰ります
TOWN	4. N □ V / N ₺ V
	5. どこか/何か - 1995
	6. ご注文
LESSON 14	90
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. Verh conjugation
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Verb groups
Conversation:	3. Verb 7-form
To Umeda, please	4. Vて-form ください
III.Reference Words & Information:	5.Vて-form います
STATION	6. Vます-formましょうか
	7. Sιが、Sz
	8. Nが V
LESSON 15	96
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1.Vて-formもいいです
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2.Vて-formは いけません
Conversation:	3. V て-form います
Tell me about your family	4. V て-form います
III.Reference Words & Information:	5.知りません
OCCUPATIONS	
LESSON 16	102
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. V $\tau$ -form, [V $\tau$ -form], $\sim$
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. い-adj (~火) →~ くて、~
Conversation:	3. N な-adj [な] で、~
Tell me how to use this machine	[x]
III.Reference Words & Information:	4. V:て-formから、V2
HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY	5. N₁(1 N₂∜ adjective
	6.どうやって
	7. どの N

I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation		
II. Translation	1. Verb Typ-form		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Vない-formないで ください		
Conversation:	3. Vない-formなければ なりません		
What seems to be the problem?	4. Vない-formなくても いいです		
III.Reference Words & Information:	5. N (object) (‡		
BODY & ILLNESS	6. N (time) までに V		
LESSON 18	114		
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation		
II. Translation	1. Verb dictionary form		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	$V  ext{ dictionary form } ZV$ が できます $V  ext{ dictionary form } ZV$ が できます $V  ext{ dictionary form } ZV$ です		
Conversation:	V dictionary form こと「か」できます		
What is your hobby?	3. to the or start of IN		
III.Reference Words & Information:	わたしの 趣味は { V dictionary form こと } Cす		
ACTIONS	4. Vi dictionary form		
	Nの		
	Quantifier (period)		
	5. なかなか		
	6. ぜひ		
LESSON 19	120		
	IV.Grammar Explanation		
П. Translation	1. Verb /z-form		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Vた-form ことが あります		
Conversation:	3. Vた-formり、Vた-formり します		
As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow			
III.Reference Words & Information:	4. い-adj (〜)^) →〜 ⟨		
TRADITIONAL CULTURE & ENTERTAINMENT	NIE		
	5. そうですね		
LECCON 20			
LESSON 20······	126		
	IV.Grammar Explanation		
II. Translation	1. Polite style and plain style		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain		
Conversation:	style		
What will you do for the summer vacation?	3. Conversation in the plain style		
III.Reference Words & Information:			
HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE			

LESSON 17-----108

LESSON 21	132
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. plain formと 思います
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. "S" と言います plain form
Conversation:	plain form
I think so, too	3. V
III.Reference Words & Information:	い-adj (prain torin (アルトカラ
POSITIONS IN SOCIETY	3. V
	N (~*)
	4. N <sub>i</sub> (place)で N <sub>i</sub> が あります
	5. N (occasion) T
	6.Nでも V
	7. Vない-formないと
LESSON 22	138
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. Noun modification
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Noun modification by sentences
Conversation:	3. N⊅ <sup>₹</sup>
What kind of apartment would you like?	4. V dictionary form 時間/約束/用事
III.Reference Words & Information:	
CLOTHES	
LESSON 23	144
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation
II. Translation	1. V dictionary form \
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	Vない-form
Conversation:	い-adj (~い)
How can I get there?	v は ( ~ ( )
III.Reference Words & Information:	NØ
ROAD & TRAFFIC	2. V dictionary form
ROAD & TRAFFIC	2. V dictionary form Vた-form
ROAD & TRAFFIC	2. V dictionary form とき、~ Vた-form とき、~ 3. V dictionary form と、~
ROAD & TRAFFIC	¥ / 2 -101111
ROAD & TRAFFIC	3. V dictionary form と、~

LESSON 24	150		
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation		
II. Translation	1. くれます		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. (あげます		
Conversation:	2.		
Will you help me?	しくれます		
III.Reference Words & Information:	3. N (person)が V		
EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS	4. Interrogative か V		
LESSON 25	156		
I. Vocabulary	IV.Grammar Explanation		
II. Translation	L plain past form b. ~		
Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences	2. Vた-formら、~		
Conversation:	3. <b>V</b> 7 - form		
Thank you for having been kind to me	い-adj (~火) →~ くて		
III.Reference Words & Information:	3. V T-form (ハ-adj (〜火)) →〜⟨ T な-adj [な]→で N T		
LIFE	NT'		
	4. もし and いくら		
	5, N⋪⁴		
SUMMARY LESSON ······	163		
I. Particles			
II. How to Use the Forms			
III.Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions			
IV. Various Conjunctions			
APPENDICES	172		
I. Numerals			
II. Expressions of time			
III.Expressions of period			
IV.Counters			
V. Conjugation of verbs			

#### .\_2

#### INTRODUCTION

## 1. General Features of Japanese

#### 1. Parts of Speech

The Japanese language is comprised of verbs, adjectives, nouns, adverbs, conjunctions and particles.

#### 2. Word Order

A predicate always comes at the end of a sentence. A modifier always comes before the word or phrase to be modified.

#### 3. Predicate

There are three types of predicates in Japanese: noun, verb and adjective. A predicate inflects according to whether it is (1) affirmative or negative and (2) non-past or past.

Adjectives are divided into two types according to their type of inflection.

They are called V-adjectives and  $\mathcal{L}$ -adjectives.

In Japanese, words do not inflect for person, gender or number.

#### 4. Particle

A particle is used to show the grammatical relation between words, to show the speaker's intention or to connect sentences.

#### 5. Omission

Words or phrases are often omitted if they are understood from the context. Even the subject and object of a sentence are often omitted.

#### II. Japanese Script

There are three kinds of letters in Japanese: hiragana, katakana and kanji (Chinese characters). Hiragana and katakana are phonetic representations of sounds, and each letter basically corresponds to one mora (a unit of sound. See III). Kanji convey meanings as well as sounds.

In Japanese script, all three types of letters are used together. Katakana are used to write foreign names and loan words. 1945 kanji letters are fixed as essential for daily use. Hiragana are used to write particles, the inflectable parts of words, etc. Other than these three types of letters, romaji (Roman letters) are sometimes used for the convenience of foreigners. You may see romaji at stations and on sign-boards. Below are examples of all four types of script.

$$\frac{\Box}{\bigcirc}$$
  $\frac{\Box}{\bigcirc}$   $\frac{$ 

Mr. Tanaka is going to the department store with Mr. Miller.

# III. Pronunciation of Japanese

## 1. Kana and Mora

	あ-line	V^-line	ラ-line	え-line	お-line
あ-row	あア	いイ	うウ	えエ	おオ
	a	i	u	e	0
か-row	かカ	きキ	くク	けケ	こコ
<u>k</u>	ka	ki	ku	kc	ko
さ-row	さサ	しシ	すス	せせ	そソ
S	sa	shi	su	sc	80
t;-row	t: 9	ちチ	つツ	てテ	とト
t	ta	chi	tsu	te	to
⊅-row	なナ	にニ	ぬヌ	ねネ	0/
n	na	ni	nu	ne	no
11-row	はハ	ひと	ふフ	^ \	ほホ
h	ha	hi	fu	he	ho
∄-row	まマ	みき	むム	めメ	ŧ₹
trì	ma	mi	mu	me	mo
t's-row	やヤ	(いイ)	カユ	(えエ)	13
у	ya	(i)	yu	(c)	yo
ら-row	らラ	9 9	るル	れレ	ろロ
r	ra	ri	ru	re	ro
わ-row	わワ	(い イ)	(ナウ)	(え エ)	をヲ
w	wa	(i)	(u)	(e)	0
	んン				
	n				

c	.g.,	
		hiragana script
	あアー	hiragana script katakana script
	a —	the Roman alphabet

きゃ キャ	きゅキュ	きょキョ
kya	kyu	kyo
しゃ シャ	しゅ シュ	しょショ
sha	shu	sho
ちゃチャ	ちゅチュ	ちょチョ
cha	chu	cho
にや ニャ	にゅニュ	によごョ
nya	nyu	nyo
ひゃヒャ	ひゅヒュ	ひょヒョ
hya	hyu	hyo
みや ミヤ	みゅミュ	みよミョ
mya	myu	myo

りゃりゃ	りゅりュ	リよりョ
rya	ryu	ryo

カ₹-row	がガ	ぎギ	ぐグ	げゲ	ごゴ
g	ga	gi	gu	ge	go
ざ-row	ざザ	じジ	ずズ	ぜぜ	ぞゾ
Z	za	ji	Zu	ze	20
ti-row	だダ	ぢヂ	づツ	でデ	どド
d	da	ji	zu	de	do
(#-row	ぜべ	びビ	ぶブ	7.	ほボ
b	ba	bi -	bu	be	bo
(f-row	ばパ	ぴピ	ぶプ	ペペ	ぽポ
p	pa	pi	pu	pe	po

ぎゃ ギャ	ぎゅギュ	ぎょギョ
_ gya	gyu	gyo
じゃジャ	じゅジュ	じょジョ
ja	ju	jo

びゃ ビャ	びゅビュ	びょビョ	
bya	byu	byo	
びゃピャ	びゅピュ	ぴょピョ	
pya	pyu	pyo	

The katakana letters in the square on the right are not in the above table. They are used to write sounds which are not original Japanese sounds but are needed for use in loan words.

	ウィwi		ウェ we	ウォ wo
			$\mathcal{V}$ $\perp$ she	
			$f$ $\pm$ che	
ツァ tsa			ツェ tse	ツォ tso
	ティti	トゥtu		
ファfa	フィfi		フェ fc	フォ fo
			ジェje	
	ディ di	ドゥ du	-	
		デュ dyu		

\_4

The Japanese language is based on five vowel sounds:  $\mathfrak{F}(a)$ ,  $\mathfrak{I}(i)$ ,  $\mathfrak{I}(u)$ ,  $\mathfrak{I}(e)$  and  $\mathfrak{F}(o)$  (see the table on the previous page). All spoken sounds are derived from these five vowels. They are used alone or are attached to either a consonant (e.g.,  $k+a=\hbar$ ) or a consonant plus the semi-vowel "y" (e.g.,  $k+y+a=\mathfrak{F}(a)$ ). The exception to this is a special mora,  $\mathfrak{L}(a)$ , which is not followed by vowels. All of these sounds are of equal length when spoken.

[Note 1] A mora is a unit of sound in Japanese.

[Note 2] In order to write the Japanese language according to the pronunciation, kana are used. (See "Kana and Mora" on the previous page.) One kana letter or one kana letter accompanied by a small kana letter (e.g., きゃ) basically corresponds to one mora.

#### 2. Long Vowels

A long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the ordinary vowels  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{V}, \mathcal{I}$ , and  $\mathcal{B}$ . If you count the length of the vowel  $\mathcal{B}$  as one, the length of the long vowel  $\mathcal{B}$  is counted as two. This means  $\mathcal{B}$  is one mora long, whereas  $\mathcal{B}$  is two moras long.

Whether a vowel is long or not can change the meaning of the word.

```
e.g., おばさん (aunt): おば<u>あ</u>さん (grandmother)
おじさん (uncle): おじ<u>い</u>さん (grandfather)
ゆき (snow):ゆ<u>う</u>き (courage)
え (picture):え<u>え</u> (yes) とる (take): と<u>お</u>る (pass)
ここ (here): こ<u>う</u>こう (high school) へや(room): へ<u>い</u>や(plain)
カード (card) タクシー (taxi) スーパー (supermarket)
テープ (tape) ノート (notebook)
```

[Note]

#### 1) How to write the long vowels in hiragana

- (1) The long vowels of the  $\delta$ -line

  Add  $\delta$  to the hiragana letters belonging to the  $\delta$ -line.
- (2) The long vowels of the V-line Add V to the hiragana letters belonging to the V-line.
- (3) The long vowels of the  $\hat{\gamma}$ -line Add  $\hat{\gamma}$  to the hiragana letters belonging to the  $\hat{\gamma}$ -line.
- (4) The long vowels of the え-line Add い to the hiragana letters belonging to the え-line. (exceptions: えぇ yes, ねぇ say, おねぇ さん elder sister)
- (5) The long vowels of the お-line
  Add う to the hiragana letters belonging to the お-line.
  (exceptions: おおきい big, おおい many, とおい far, and some others)

#### 2) How to write the long vowels in katakana

For all the lines, add "-"

#### 3. Pronunciation of ん

L never appears at the beginning of a word. It constitutes one mora. For easier pronunciation, the way it is said changes according to the sound that comes after it.

1) It is pronounced /n/ before the sounds in the  $t_{-}$ ,  $t_{-}$ ,  $t_{-}$  and  $t_{-}$  rows.

e.g., 
$$t \underline{\lambda} t \sim \text{(opposite)} \quad j \underline{\lambda} t \sim \text{(sport)} \quad t \underline{\lambda} t \sim \text{(rail)} \quad \lambda \underline{\lambda} t \sim \text{(all)}$$

2) It is pronounced /m/ before the sounds in the  $(\sharp -, (\sharp - \text{ and } \sharp - \text{rows.})$ 

3) It is pronounced /!]/ before the sounds in the  $\hbar$ '- and  $\hbar$ '-rows.

#### 4. Pronunciation of $\circ$

 $\supset$  appears before a sound belonging to either the  $\mathscr{H}$ -,  $\mathscr{E}$ -,  $\mathscr{H}$ -row. In writing loan words, it is also used before sounds belonging to the  $\mathscr{H}$ -row,  $\mathscr{H}$ -row, etc. It constitutes one mora and has one mora's length.

e.g., ぶか (subordinate): ぶっか (commodity price)

#### 5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with \*, \* or \*.

 $\mathfrak{F}, \mathfrak{F}, \mathfrak{t}, \mathfrak{t}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{t}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{t}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}$  or  $\mathfrak{h}, \mathfrak{h}$ 

e.g., ひゃく (jump) : ひゃく (hundred)

$$\underbrace{3\pm j}$$
 (today)  $\underbrace{5\pm j}$  (department chief)  $\underbrace{9\pm 2j}$  (travel)

#### 6. Pronunciation of the が-row

The consonant of this row, when it comes at the beginning of a word, is pronounced [9]. In other cases, it is usually pronounced [9]. Recently some Japanese do not differentiate between [9] and [9], and always use [9].

# 6

#### 7. Devoicing of Vowels [i] and [u]

The vowels [i] and [u] are devoiced and not heard when they come between voiceless consonants. The vowel [u] of t[su] in  $\sim t$  or  $\sim t$  is also devoiced when the sentence finishes with either  $\sim t$  or  $\sim t$ .

#### 8. Accent

The Japanese language has pitch accent. That is, some moras in a word are pronounced high and others low. The words are divided into two types according to whether a word has a falling pitch or not. Words with a falling pitch are subdivided into three types according to where the fall in pitch occurs. The standard Japanese accent is characterized by the fact that the first and the second moras have different pitches, and that the pitch never rises again once it has fallen.

[Types of Accent]

- 1) A fall in pitch does not occur.
  e.g., にわ (garden) はな (nose) なまえ (name) にほんこ(Japanese language)
- 2) A fall in pitch comes after the first mora.
  e.g., ほん (book) てんき (weather) ちいけつ (next month)
- 3) A fall in pitch comes in the word at some place after the second mora.
  e.g., たまこ (egg) ひこうき (airplane) せんせい (teacher)
- 4) A fall in pitch comes after the last mora.
  e.g., くつ(shoes) はな(flower) かけみ(holiday) おとうと(younger brother)

" $\Box \mathcal{T}$  (nose)" in 1) and " $\Box \mathcal{T}$  (flower)" in 4) are alike, but the type of accent is different, because if a particle like D is added after each word 1) is pronounced  $\Box \mathcal{T}$ , whereas 4) is pronounced  $\Box \mathcal{T}$ . The following are some other examples of words whose meaning differ according to the type of accent.

There are local differences in accent. For example, the accent of the area around Osaka is quite different from the standard one. The following are examples.

e.g., Tokyo accent : Osaka accent

(standard Japanese accent)

は好 : はな (flower) リんご : リんご (apple) らんがく : おんがく (music)

#### 9. Intonation

There are three patterns. They are 1) flat, 2) rising and 3) falling. Questions are pronounced with a rising intonation. Other sentences are usually pronounced flat, but sometimes with a falling intonation. A falling intonation can express feelings such as agreement or disappointment, etc.

e.g., 佐藤 : あした 友達と お花見を します。 【→ flat】

ミラーさんも いっしょに 行きませんか。【Jrising】

ミラー: ああ、いいですねえ。 【 falling】

Sato : I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.

Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?

Miller : Oh, that sounds good.

## PRELIMINARY LESSON

#### I. Pronunciation

- 1. Kana and Mora
- 2. Long Vowels

おばさん (aunt) : おば<u>あ</u>さん (grandmother)

おじさん (uncle) : おじ<u>い</u>さん (grandfather)

ゆき (snow): ゆ<u>う</u>き (courage)

え (picture) : え<u>え</u> (yes)

とる (take) : と<u>お</u>る (pass)

 $C \subset (here): C \xrightarrow{j} C \xrightarrow{j} (high school) \land \forall (room): \land \underline{\cup} \forall (plain)$ 

カード (card) タクシー (taxi) スーパー (supermarket)

 $\vec{r} = \vec{r}$  (tape) l = l (notebook)

3. Pronunciation of A

 $\lambda \underline{\mathcal{L}} \mathcal{U}$  (pencil)  $\lambda \underline{\mathcal{L}} t$  (all)  $(\lambda \underline{\mathcal{L}}) t$  (weather)  $(\lambda \underline{\mathcal{L}}) t$  (no smoking)

4. Pronunciation of つ

ぶか (subordinate) : ぶっか (commodity price)

かさい (fire): か<u>っ</u>さい (applause)

おと (sound): おっと (husband)

にっき (diary) ざっし (magazine) きって (stamp) いっぱい (a cup of  $\sim$ ) コップ (glass) ベッド (bed)

5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with や, ゆ or よ

ひやく(jump): ひゃく(hundred)

じゆう (freedom): じゅう (ten)

びよういん (beauty parlor): びょういん (hospital)

シャツ(shirt) おちゃ(tea) ぎゅうにゅう(milk)

きょう (today) ぶちょう (department chief) りょこう (travel)

6. Accent

にわ (garden) なまえ (name) にほんご (Japanese language) 【 ほん (book) てんき (weather) らいげつ (next month) 【 たまご (egg) ひこうき (airplane) せんせい (teacher) 【 くつ (shoes) やすみ (holiday) おとうと (younger brother) 【 はし (bridge): はし (chopsticks) いち (one): いち (location)

Tokyo accent : Osaka accent

はな : はな (flower) リんご : リんご (apple) 月んがく : おわがく (music)

#### 7. Intonation

e.g., 佐藤 : あした 友達と お花見を します。【→】

ミラーさんも いっしょに 行きませんか。【丿】

ミラー:ああ、いいですねえ。 []

Sato : I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.

Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?

Miller : Oh, that sounds good.

## II. Classroom Instructions

- 1. Let's begin.
- 2. Let's finish (the lesson).
- 3. Let's take a break.
- 4. Do you understand? (Yes, I do./No, I don't.)
- 5. Once more.
- 6. Fine. / Good.
- 7. That's not OK. / That's wrong.
- 8. name
- 9. exam, homework
- 10. question, answer, example

## III. Daily Greetings and Expressions

- 1. Good morning.
- 2. Good afternoon.
- 3. Good evening.
- 4. Good night,
- 5. Good-bye.
- 6. Thank you very much.
- 7. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.
- 8. Please.

#### IV. Numerals

- 0 zero
- 1 one
- 2 two
- 3 three
- 4 four
- 5 five
- 6 six
- 7 seven
- 8 eight
- 9 nine
- 10 ten

# **TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION**

第一課	lesson –	名詞	noun
文型	sentence pattern	動詞	verb
例文	example sentence	形容詞	adjective
会話	conversation	い形容詞	V-adjective
練習	practice	な形容詞	な-adjective
問題	exercise	助詞	particle
答え	answer	記して	adverb
読み物	reading practice	接続詞	conjunction
復習	review	数詞	quantifier
,,,,	1011071	助数詞	counters
自次	contents	疑問詞	interrogative
	coments	WC1519-3	(question word)
索引	index		(question word)
	moon	名詞文	noun (predicate) sentence
*************************************	grammar	動詞文	verb (predicate) sentence
文法 文 文	sentence	形容詞文	_
^	schence	少女的人	adjective (predicate) sentence
単語 (語)	word		sentence
(語) 句 節		· 兹	au bia at
ショ <b>6</b> 折	phrase clause	上面	subject
ξl	Clause	<b>亚帝</b>	predicate
ロット A <b>ズに 立た</b>		目的語 学編	object
光百	pronunciation	主題	topic
<b>以</b> ( · · · <b>工</b>	vowel	1.1.1.1.1 基 由	or
子 <del>音</del> 拍	consonant	有定 子写	affirmative
	mora	省 [2]	negative
アクセント	accent	元 ) 李海宗	perfective
イントネーション	intonation	未完了	imperfective
- 1 3/1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -		過去	past
[か]行	[か]row	非過去	non-past
[八]列	[VV]line		
丁寧体	polite style of speech		
6 2 1 5 5	plain style of speech		
普通体 活用	inflection		
	form		
フォーム 〜形 修飾	~form		
修飾	modification		
からです (5) なし (5) なし			
MAL	exception		

# **ABBREVIATIONS**

N noun (名詞)

e.g. がくせい つくえ

student desk

い-adj い-adjective (い形容詞)

e.g. おいしい たかい

tasty high

な-adj な-adjective (な形容詞)

e.g. きれい[な] しずか[な]

beautiful quiet

V verb (動詞)

e.g. かきます たべます

write eat

S sentence (文)

e.g. これは 本です。

This is a book.

わたしは あした 東京へ 行きます。

11\_\_\_\_

I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.

# \_\_\_12

# Lesson 1

# I. Vocabulary

わたし		I
わたしたち		we
あなた		you
あの ひと	あの人	that person, he, she
(あのかた)	(あの方)	(あのかた is the polite equivalent of あの
		ひと)
みなさん	皆さん	ladies and gentlemen, all of you
~さん		Mr. Mo (title of seement added to a name)
		Mr., Ms. (title of respect added to a name)
~ちゃん		(suffix often added to a child's name
, ,	.TP	instead of ~さん)
~ < \lambda	~君	(suffix often added to a boy's name)
~じん	~人	(suffix meaning "a national of"; e.g.,
		アメリカじん , an American)
せんせい	先生	teacher, instructor (not used when
C70 C	/ <b>L</b>	referring to one's own job)
きょうし	教師	teacher, instructor
がくせい	学生	student
かいしゃいん	会社員	company employee
しゃいん	社員	employee of $\sim$ Company (used with a
CACA	<b>作工员</b>	company's name; e.g., IMCのしゃいん)
ぎんこういん	銀行員	bank employee
いしゃ	医者	medical doctor
けんきゅうしゃ	研究者	researcher, scholar
けんさゅうしゃ	柳龙相	
エノシー)		engineer
だいがく	大学	university
びょういん	病院	hospital
- · ·		•
でんき	電気	electricity, light
だれ(どなた)		who (どなた is the polite equivalent of
		だれ)

ーさい - 歳 - years old なんさい 何歳 how old (おいくつ is the polite equivalent (おいくつ) of なんさい) はい yes いいえ no しつれいですが 失礼ですが Excuse me, but おなまえは? お名前は? May I have your name? はじめまして。 初めまして。 How do you do? (lit. I am meeting you for the first time. Usually used as the first phrase when introducing oneself.) どうぞ よろしく [おねがいします]。Pleased to meet you. (lit. Please be nice どうぞ よろしく [お願いします]。to me. Usually used at the end of a self-introduction.) こちらは ~さんです。 This is Mr./Ms. $\sim$ . ~からきました。 I came (come) from  $\sim$ .

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

Brazil

アメリカ U.S.A.
イギリス U.K.
インド India
インドネシア Indonesia
韓国 South Korea

~から 来ました。

ブラジル

タイ Thailand 中国 China China Fイツ Germany Japan フランス France

さくら大学/富士大学 fictitious universities

IMC/パワー電気/ブラジルエアー

fictitious companies
AKC fictitious institute
神戸病院 fictitious hospital

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I am Mike Miller.
- 2. Mr. Santos is not a student.
- 3. Is Mr. Miller a company employee?
- 4. Mr. Santos is also a company employee.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Are you Mr. Mike Miller?
  - ···Yes, I am Mike Miller.
- 2. Are you a student, Mr. Miller?
  - ···No, I am not a student.

    I am a company employee.
- 3. Is Mr. Wang an engineer?
  - ···No, Mr. Wang is not an engineer. He is a doctor.
- 4. Who is that person?
  - ···He is Professor Watt. He is a teacher at Sakura University.
- 5. How old is Teresa?
  - ... She is nine years old.

#### Conversation

#### How do you do?

Sato: Good morning.

Yamada: Good morning.

Ms. Sato, this is Mr. Mike Miller.

Miller: How do you do? I am Mike Miller.

I am from the United States of America.

Nice to meet you.

Sato: I am Sato Keiko.

Nice to meet you.

14

# III. Reference Words & Information

# 国・人・ことば COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE

	人 People	ことば Language
アメリカ (U.S.A.)	アメリカ人	英語 (English)
イギリス (U.K.)	イギリス人	英語 (English)
イタリア (Italy)	イタリアズ	イタリア語 (Italian)
イラン (Iran)	イラン人	ペルシア語 (Persian)
インド (India)	インドズ	ヒンディー語 (Hindi)
インドネシア (Indonesia)	インドネシア人	インドネシア語 (Indonesian)
エジプト (Egypt)	エジプト人	アラビア語 (Arabic)
オーストラリア(Australia)	オーストラリア人	英語 (English)
カナダ (Canada)	カナダ人	英語 (English)
		フランス語 (French)
韓国 (South Korea)	韓国人	韓国語 (Korean)
サウジアラビア(Saudi Arabia)	サウジアラビア人	アラビア語 (Arabic)
シンガポール (Singapore)	シンガポール关	英語 (English)
スペイン (Spain)	スペイン犬	スペイン語 (Spanish)
タイ (Thailand)	タイ人	タイ語 (Thai)
中国 (China)	中国人	中国語 (Chinese)
ドイツ (Germany)	ドイツ人	ドイツ語 (German)
日本 (Japan)	日本人	日本語 (Japanese)
フランス (France)	フランス人	フランス語 (French)
フィリピン (Philippines)	フィリピンズ	フィリピノ語 (Filipino)
ブラジル (Brazil)	ブラジル犬	ポルトガル語 (Portuguese)
ベトナム (Vietnam)	ベトナム人	ベトナム語 (Vietnamese)
マレーシア (Malaysia)	マレーシア人	マレーシア語 (Malaysian)
メキシコ (Mexico)	メキシコ人	スペイン語 (Spanish)
ロシア (Russia)	ロシア人	ロシア語 (Russian)

1

# IV. Grammar Explanation

# 1. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>です!

1) Particle (1

The particle (# indicates that the word before it is the topic of the sentence. You select a noun you want to talk about, add I to show that it is the topic and give a statement about the topic.

I am Mike Miller.

[Note] The particle は is read わ.

2) です

Nouns used with Tt work as predicates.

TT indicates judgement or assertion.

TT also conveys that the speaker is being polite towards the listener.

77 inflects when the sentence is negative (see 2, below) or in the past tense (see Lesson 12).

I am an engineer.

2. N, は N2 じゃ ありません

じゃ ありません is the negative form of です. It is the form used in daily conversation. For a formal speech or writing, では ありません is used instead.

③ サントスさんは 学生じゃ ありません。 Mr. Santos is not a student.

[Note] は in では is read わ.

# 3. Sか

1) Particle か

The particle  $\mathfrak{P}$  is used to express the speaker's doubt, question, uncertainty, etc. A question is formed by simply adding to the end of the sentence. A question ends with a rising intonation.

2) Questions asking whether a statement is correct or not

As mentioned above, a sentence becomes a question when  $\mathfrak{h}$  is added to the end. The word order does not change. The question thus made asks whether a statement is correct or not. Depending on whether you agree with the statement or not, your answer to such a question begins with はい or いいえ.

Is Mr. Miller an American?

···Yes, he is.

⑤ ミラーさんは 先生ですか。 …いいえ、先生じゃ ありません。

Is Mr. Miller a teacher?

···No, he is not.

3) Questions with interrogatives

An interrogative replaces the part of the sentence that covers what you want to ask about. The word order does not change, and bis added at the end.

16

## 4. N t

t is added after a topic instead of 1t when the statement about the topic is the same as the previous topic.

- ⑦ ミラーさんは 会社員です。
- Mr. Miller is a company employee.
- グプタさんも 会社員です。 Mr. Gupta is also a company employee.

### 5. N. O N2

 $\mathcal{O}$  is used to connect two nouns.  $N_1$  modifies  $N_2$ . In Lesson 1,  $N_1$  is an organization or some kind of group to which  $N_2$  belongs.

⑧ ミラーさんは I M C の 社員です。 Mr. Miller is an IMC employee.

### 6. ~さん

 $\stackrel{>}{\sim}$   $\stackrel{>}{\sim}$  is added to the name of the listener or a third person to show the speaker's respect to the person. It should never be used with the speaker's own name.

⑨ あの 方は ミラーさんです。 That's Mr. Miller.

When referring directly to the listener, the word  $\delta t$  (you) is not commonly used if you know the listener's name. The listener's family name followed by  $\delta L$  is usually used.

⑩ 鈴木: ミラーさんは 学生ですか ミラー:いいえ、会社員です。

Suzuki: Are you a student?

Miller: No, I'm a company employee.

JAPAN CENTER
SEP. 0 4, 2000

# Lesson 2

# I. Vocabulary

これ それ あれ		this (thing here) that (thing near you) that (thing over there)
この~ その~ あの~		this ~, this ~ here that ~, that ~ near you that ~, that ~ over there
ほん しっぱん しっぷん トょし かートょし ドンカード ンカード	本 辞書 雜聞 手名刺	book dictionary magazine newspaper notebook pocket notebook business card card telephone card
えんぴつ ボールペン シャープペンシル	鉛筆	pencil ballpoint pen mechanical pencil, propelling pencil
かぎ とけい かさ かばん	時計 <b>傘</b>	key watch, clock umbrella bag, briefcase
[カセット]テープ テープレコーダー テレビ ラジオ カメラ コンピューター じどうしゃ	自動車	[cassette] tape tape recorder television radio camera computer automobile, car

つくえ いす	机	desk chair	
チョコレート コーヒー		chocolate coffee	
えいご にほんご ~ご	英語 日本語 ~語	the English language the Japanese language language	2
なん	何	what	
そう		so	
ちがいます。 そうですか。 あのう ほんの きもちです。 ほんの 気持ちです		No, it isn't./You are wrong. I see./Is that so? well (used to show hesitation) It's nothing./It's a token of my gratitude.	
どうぞ。	·	Please./Here you are. (used when offering someone something) Well, thanks.	19
[どうも] ありがと	う [ございます]	Thank you [very much].	
		I hope for your kind assistance hereafter.  I am pleased to meet you. (response to	

どうぞよろしく)

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. This is a dictionary.
- 2. This is a book on computers.
- 3. That is my umbrella.
- 4. This umbrella is mine.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Is this a telephone card?
  - ···Yes, it is.
- 2. Is that a notebook?
  - ...No, it's not. It's a pocket notebook.
- 3. What is that?
  - ... This is a business card.
- 4. Is this a "9" or a "7"?
  - ···lt's a "9."
- 5. What is that magazine about?
  - ···It's a magazine on cars.
- 6. Whose bag is that?
  - ···It's Ms. Sato's bag.
- 7. Is this umbrella yours?
  - ...No, it's not mine.
- 8. Whose is this key?
  - "It's mine.

#### Conversation

### This is just a token

Yamada: Yes. Who is it?

Santos: I am Santos from (apartment) 408.

\_\_\_\_\_\_

Santos: Hello, I am Santos.

How do you do?

It is nice to meet you.

Yamada: The pleasure's mine.

Santos: Er, this is a little something...

Yamada: Oh, thank you. What is it?

Santos: It's coffee. Please.

Yamada: Thank you very much.

2

### III. Reference Words & Information

## 名前 FAMILY NAMES

### Most Common Family Names

1	佐藤	2	鈴木	3	高橋	4	曲中
5	渡辺	6	伊藤	7	节村	8	山本
9	小 森	10	斎藤	11	加藤	12	吉 田
13	≟ 描	14	佐夕木	15	松本	16	ü b
17	未 紂	18	并 上	19	前 部	20	林

2





When people meet for the first time on business, business cards are exchanged.



When you move house, it is polite to introduce yourself to your new neighbours and give them a small gift, such as a towel, soap or sweets.

### 1. これ/それ/あれ

これ、それ and あれ are demonstratives.

They work as nouns. これ refers to a thing near the speaker. それ refers to a thing near the listener. あれ refers to a thing far from the speaker and the listener.

① それは 辞書ですか。

Is that a dictionary?

② これを ください。

I'll take this. (lit. Please give this to me.)(L. 3)

### 2. この N/その N/あの N

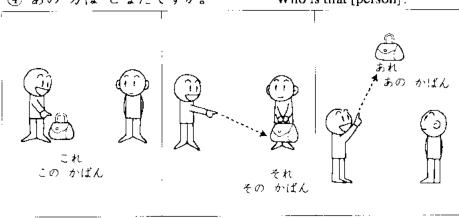
この、その and あの modify nouns. "この N" refers to a thing or a person near the speaker. "その N" refers to a thing or a person near the listener. "あの N" refers to a thing or a person far from both the speaker and the listener.

③ この 本は わたしのです。

This book is mine.

④ あの 方は どなたですか。

Who is that [person]?



### 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません

In the case of a noun sentence, the word  $\vec{\epsilon}$  is often used to answer a question requiring an affirmative or negative answer. (11), そうです is the affirmative answer and いいえ、そうじゃ ありません is the negative answer.

⑤ それは テレホンカードですか。 …はい、そうです。

Is that a telephone card? ···Yes, it is. (lit. Yes, it's so.)

⑥ それは テレホンカードですか。 …いいえ、そうじゃ ありません。 …No, it isn't. (lit. No, it's not so.)

Is that a telephone card?

The verb ちがいます (lit. to differ) can be used to mean そうじゃ ありません.

⑦ それは テレホンカードですか。 …いいえ、違います。

Is that a telephone card? ···No, it isn't.

22

## 4. S. n. S. n

This is a question asking the listener to choose between alternatives,  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ , for the answer. As an answer to this type of question, the chosen sentence is stated. Neither (1) nor (1) is used.

## 5. N<sub>1</sub> Ø N<sub>2</sub>

You learned in Lesson 1 that  $\mathcal{O}$  is used to connect two nouns when  $N_1$  modifies  $N_2$ . In Lesson 2 you learn two other uses of this  $\mathcal{O}$ .

1)  $N_1$  explains what  $N_2$  is about.

2) N<sub>1</sub> explains who owns N<sub>2</sub>.

 $N_2$  is sometimes omitted when it is obvious. When  $N_2$  means a person, however, you cannot omit it.

···No, it's not mine.

…いいえ、わたしのじゃ ありません。③ ミラーさんは IMCの 社員ですか。…はい、IMCの 社員です。

Is Mr. Miller an employee of IMC?

···Yes, he is.

## そうですか

This expression is used when the speaker receives new information and shows that he or she understands it.

Is this umbrella yours?

... No, it's Mr. Schmidt's.

I see.

2

23\_\_\_

# Lesson 3

# I. Vocabulary

ここ そこ あそこ どこ		here, this place there, that place near you that place over there where, what place
こちら そちら あちら どちら		this way, this place (polite equivalent of $\mathbb{C}^2$ ) that way, that place near you (polite equivalent of $\mathbb{C}^2$ ) that way, that place over there (polite equivalent of $\mathbb{A}^2$ ) which way, where (polite equivalent of $\mathbb{C}^2$ )
きょくしつ しおいけい かいけだや かいけが かいけが かいだべん かいだべん かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい かい	教食事会受 ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・	classroom dining hall, canteen office conference room, assembly room reception desk lobby room toilet, rest room staircase elevator, lift escalator
[お]くに かいしゃ うち	[お]国 会社	country company house, home
でんわ くつ ネクタイ ワイン たばこ	<b>電</b> 話 靴	telephone, telephone call shoes necktie wine tobacco, cigarette
うりば	売り場	department, counter (in a department store)

ちか - かい (- がい) なんがい	地下 - 階 何階	basement -th floor what floor	
ーえん いくら	一円	- yen how much	
ひゃく せん まん	百 千 万	hundred thousand ten thousand	
<ul><li>◆会話&gt;</li><li>すみません。</li><li>~でございます。</li><li>[~を] 見せてくがしています。</li></ul>	<b>ささい。</b>	Excuse me.  (polite equivalent of $\mathcal{T}$ )  Please show me [~].  well, then, in that case	

Give me [ $\sim$ ], please.

25

新大阪 name of a station in Osaka イタリア Italy Switzerland MT/ヨーネン/アキックス fictitious companies

[~を] ください。

### II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

- 1. This is a dining hall.
- 2. The telephone is over there.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Is this Shin-Osaka?
  - ···Yes, it is,
- 2. Where is the rest room?
  - "It is over there.
- 3. Where is Mr. Yamada?
  - ... He is in the office.
- 4. Where is the elevator?
  - ...It is there.
- 5. Which country are you from?
  - ···America.
- 6. Where are those shoes from?
  - ...They're Italian shoes.
- 7. How much is this watch?
  - ...It's 18,600 yen.

### Conversation

#### I'll take it

Maria: Excuse me. Where is the wine department?

Sales clerk A: It is in the first basement.

Maria: Thanks.

\_\_\_\_\_

Maria: Excuse me. Could you show me that wine?

Sales clerk B: Certainly. Here you are.

Maria: Is this French wine?

Sales clerk B: No, it's Italian.

Maria: How much is it?

Sales clerk B: 2,500 yen.

Maria: Well, I'll take it.

\_\_\_\_26

## III. Reference Words & Information

# デパート DEPARTMENT STORE

3

屋上	遊園地 amusement area	
8階	食堂・催し物会場 restaurants・event hall	
7階	時計・眼鏡・カメラ watches・glasses・cameras	
6階	スポーツ用品・旅行用品 sporting goods leisure goods	
5階	子ども服・おもちゃ・本・文 children's clothes toys books s	
4階	家具・食器・電気製品 furniture-kitchenware-electrical	appliances [ ]
3階	紳士服 men's wear	
2階	婦人服 ladies' wear	
1階	靴・かばん・アクセサリー・ shoes·bags·accessories·cosmet	
B1階	食料品 food	
B 2 階	駐車場 parking lot	

## ここ/そこ/あそこ/こちら/そちら/あちら

The demonstratives これ, それ and あ that are discussed in Lesson 2 refer to a thing, while  $\Box\Box$ ,  $\rightleftarrows\Box$  and  $\lnot$   $\rightleftarrows$  refer to a place.  $\Box\Box$  is the place where the speaker is,  $\rightleftarrows\Box$  is the place where the listener is, and  $\delta \in \mathcal{L}$  is the place far from both the speaker and the listener.

こちら, そちら and あちら are demonstrative words referring to direction. こちら、そちら and あちら are also used to refer to location, in which case, they are politer than  $\mathbb{C}[\mathbb{C}]$ , そこ and あそこ.

[Note] When the speaker regards the listener as sharing his/her territory, the place where they both are is designated by the word  $\subseteq \subseteq$ . Under this situation, そこ designates the place a little distant from the speaker and listener, and あそこ designates an even more distant location.





## 2. N,は N₂(place)です

Using this sentence pattern, you can explain where a place, a thing or a person is.

- ① お手洗いは あそこです。
- ② 電話は 2階です。
- ③ 山田さんは 事務所です。

The rest room is there.

The telephone is on the second floor.

Mr. Yamada is in the office.

## どこ/どちら

どこ means "where," and どちら means "which direction." どちら can also mean "where," in which case it's politer than どこ.

- ④ お手洗いは どこですか。 …あそこです。
- ⑤ エレベーターは どちらですか。 Where's the elevator? …あちらです。

Where's the rest room?

...It's there.

"It's in that direction. (It's there.)

どこ or どちら is also used to ask the name of a country, company, school or any place or organization a person belongs to. You cannot use  $\mathcal{L}(what)$ . どちら is politer than どこ.

⑥ 学校は どこですか。

What's the name of your school?

⑦ 会社は どちらですか。

What company do you work for?

### 4. N<sub>1</sub> O N<sub>2</sub>

When  $N_1$  is the name of a country and  $N_2$  is a product, it means that  $N_2$  is made in that country. When  $N_1$  is the name of a company and  $N_2$  is a product, it means that N<sub>2</sub> is made by that company. In this structure,  $\mathcal{L}^{\circ}$  is used to ask where or by whom N2 is made.

- ⑧ これは どこの コンピューターですか。
  - …日本の コンピューターです。
  - … I M C の コンピューターです。

Where is this computer made?/ Who is the maker of this computer?

- ···It's made in Japan.
- ···IMC is.

### 5. The こ/そ/あ/ど system of demonstrative words

	C series	そ series	あ series	ど series
thing	これ.	それ	あれ	どれ (L, 8)
thing	この N	そのN	あのN	どのN
person			<u> </u>	(L. 16)
place	2.3	そこ	あそこ	どこ
direction	こちら	そちら	あちら	どちら
place (polite)				

### 6. お国

The prefix B is added to a word concerning the listener or a third person in order to express the speaker's respect to the person.

⑨ [お]国は どちらですか。 Where are you from?

# Lesson 4

# I. Vocabulary

おきますれたらきますれたらますがんきょうしますがわりますがわりますがありますがありますがありますがありますがありますがありますがありますがあ	起寝 働休 勉強 われる とます まままままままま しょう ままま まままま まままま ままま ままま かんしょう かんしょう かんしゅう しゅう しゅう かんしゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう しゅう	get up, wake up sleep, go to bed work take a rest, take a holiday study finish
デパート ぎんこう ゆうびんきょく としょかん びじゅつかん	銀行 郵便局 図書館 美術館	department store bank post office library art museum
いま - じ - ふん ( - ぷん) はん なんじ なんぷん	今 一 一 分 半 何 何 分	now - o'clock - minute half what time what minute
ごぜん ごご	午前 午後	a.m., morning p.m., afternoon
あさ ひる ばん (よる)	朝 昼 晩 (夜)	morning daytime, noon night, evening
おととい きのう きょう あした あさって		the day before yesterday yesterday today tomorrow the day after tomorrow
けさ こんぱん	今晚	this morning this evening, tonight
やすみ ひるやすみ	休み 昼休み	rest, a holiday, a day off lunchtime

	まいあさ	毎朝	every morning	
	まいばん	毎晩	every night	
	まいにち	毎日	every day	
	げつようび	月曜日	Monday	
	かようび	火曜日	Tuesday	
	すいようび もくようび	水曜日 木曜日	Wednesday	
	きんようび	金曜日	Thursday	4
	どようび	土曜日	Friday Saturday	:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
	にちようび	日曜日	Sunday	
	なんようび	何曜日	what day of the week	
	7,000	14 12 14	what day of the week	
	ばんごう	番号	number	
	なんばん	何番	what number	
	~から +		from ~	
	~まで		up to ~, until ~	
	~~~		and (used to connect nouns)	
	Z 4 3			
	そちら	the title was the tra	your place	
	たいへんですね。	大変ですね。	the state of the s	31
	えーと		sympathy)	
	λ C		well, let me see	
<	1会話 🗸			
	1 0 4		information, directory assistance	
	お願いします。		Please. (lit. ask for a favor)	
	かしこまりました。		Certainly (sir, madam)	
	お問い合わせの番号		the number being inquired about	
	[どうも] ありがとう	ございました。	Thank you very much.	
		*******	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	
	ニューヨーク		New York	
	ペキン		Beijing (北京)	
	ロンドン		London	
	バンコク		Bangkok	
	ロサンゼルス		_	
	やまと美術館		Los Angeles	
	大阪デパート		fictitious art museum	
	ス版ナハート みどり図書館		fictitious department store	
	みとり図書館 二 。. 15日		fictitious library	
	アップル銀行		fictitious bank	

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. It is five past four now.
- 2. I work from nine to five.
- 3. I get up at six in the morning.
- 4. I studied yesterday.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. What time is it now?
  - ...It is ten past two.

What time is it now in New York?

- ... It is ten past twelve at night.
- 2. From what time to what time is the bank open?
  - ... It is open from nine till three.

On what day of the week is it closed?

- ... It is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.
- 3. What time do you go to bed every night?
  - ··· I go to bed at eleven o'clock.
- 4. Do you work on Saturdays?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 5. Did you study yesterday?
  - ···No, I didn't.
- 6. What is the telephone number of IMC?
  - ···It is 341-2597.

#### Conversation

What are your opening hours?

104: Hello, this is Ishida of the 104 Service.

Karina: Could you tell me the phone number of the Yamato Art

Museum, please?

The Yamato Art Museum? Certainly.

\_\_\_\_\_

Tape: The number you are inquiring about is 0797-38-5432.

\_\_\_\_\_\_

Museum

staff member: Hello, Yamato Art Museum.

Karina: Excuse me. What are your opening hours?

Staff: We are open from nine to four.

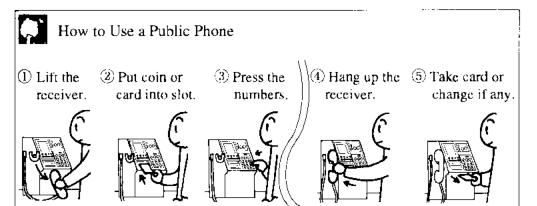
Karina: Which day of the week are you closed?

Staff: We are closed on Mondays. Karina: Thank you very much.

\_32

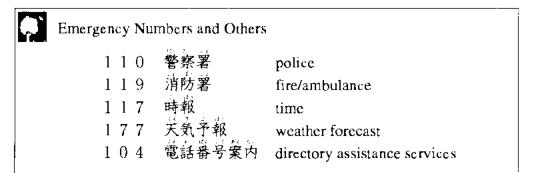
### III. Reference Words & Information

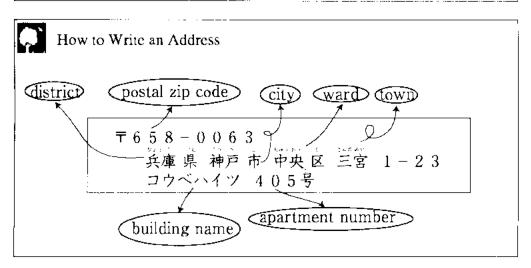
# 電話・手紙 PHONE & LETTER



Public phones accept only ¥10 coins, ¥100 coins, and telephone cards. If you put in a ¥100 coin, no change will be returned.

\* If the machine has a start button, press it after ③.





## IV. Grammar Explanation

## |今 - 時 - 分です

To express time, the counter suffixes 時 (o'clock) and 劳 (minutes) are used. The numbers are put before them. 分 is read ふん after 2, 5, 7 or 9 and ぶん after 1, 3, 4, 6, 8 or 10. 1, 6, 8 and 10 are read いっ, ろっ, はっ and じゅっ (じっ) before ぶん (See Appendices II.)

The interrogative なん is used with a counter suffix to ask questions concerning number or amounts. Therefore, the word takt (or sometimes なんぶん) is used to ask the time.

① 今 何時ですか。

What time is it now?

… 7時10分です。

···It's seven ten.

[Note] [1 marks the topic of a sentence, which you learned in Lesson 1. A geographical location can also be used as the topic as can be seen in 2.

② ニューヨークは 今 何時ですか。In New York what time is it now? …午前 4時です。 …It's 4 a.m.

## 2. Vます

1) A verb with  $\sharp \dagger$  works as a predicate.

2) ます makes a sentence polite.

③ わたしは 毎日 勉強します。 I study every day.

## 3. Vます/Vません/Vました/Vませんでした

1) It is used when a sentence expresses a habitual thing or a truth. It is also used when a sentence expresses a thing that will occur in the future. The negative form and the forms in the past tense are shown in the table below.

	non-past (future/present)	past
affirmative	(おき)ます	(おき)ました
negative	(おき)ません	(おき)ませんでした

④ 毎朝 6時に 起きます。 I get up at six every morning.
⑤ あした 6時に 起きます。 I'll get up at six tomorrow m

I'll get up at six tomorrow morning.

⑥ けさ 6時に 起きました。

I got up at six this morning.

2) Question forms of verb sentences are made in the same way as those of noun sentences; i.e., the word order remains the same and  $\dot{n}$  is added to the end of

In answering such questions, the verbs in the questions are repeated. そうです or そうじゃ ありません (see Lesson 2) cannot be used.

⑦ きのう 勉強しましたか。Did you study yesterday?…はい、勉強しました。…Yes, I did.

…はい、勉強しました。

…いいえ、勉強しませんでした。…No, I didn't.

8 毎朝 何時に 起きますか。 What time do you get up every morning? …6時に起きます。

···I get up at six.

## 4. N (time) □ V

When a verb denotes a momentary action or movement, the time when it occurs is marked with the particle  $|\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}|$  is added when the noun before it uses a numeral. It can also be added to the days of the week, though it is not essential. When the noun does not use a numeral, 15 is not added.

9 6時半に 起きます。

⑨ 6時半に 起きます。 I get up at six thirty.⑩ 7月2日に 日本へ 来ました。 I came to Japan on July 2nd. (L. 5)

① 日曜日[に] 奈良へ 行きます。 I'm going to Nara on Sunday. (L. 5)

(12) きのう 勉強しました。

I studied yesterday.

### N₁ から N₂まで

1)  $\phi$  indicates the starting time or place, and  $\xi$   $\tau$  indicates the finishing time or place.

- ③ 9時から 5時まで 働きます。 I work from nine to five.
- ④ 大阪から 東京まで 3時間 かかります。

It takes three hours from Osaka to Tokyo. (L.11)

2) から and まで are not always used together.

⑤ 9時から 働きます。

I work from nine,

- 3) ~から、~まで or ~から~まで is sometimes used with です added directly after either.
  - ⑯ 銀行は 9時から 3時までです。 The bank is open from nine to three.
  - ① 昼休みは 12時からです。

Lunchtime starts at twelve.

### 6. N 2 N 2

The particle  $\angle$  connects two nouns in coordinate relation.

⑧ 銀行の 休みは 土曜日と 日曜日です。

The bank is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.

## 7. St

12 is attached to the end of a sentence to add feeling to what the speaker says. It shows the speaker's sympathy or the speaker's expectation that the listener will agree. In the latter usage, it is often used to confirm something.

- ⑲ 毎日 10時ごろまで 勉強します。I study till about ten every day.

…大変ですね。 …That must be hard. 20 山田さんの 電話番号は 871の 6813です。

···871の 6813ですね。

Mr. Yamada's telephone number is 871-6813.

···871-6813, right?

4

# Lesson 5

# I. Vocabulary

いきます	行きます	go
きます	来ます	come
かえります	帰ります	go home, return
5 /C / G ,	74 7 & <del>9</del>	go nome, return
がっこう	学校	school
スーパー		supermarket
えき	駅	station
-		
ひこうき	飛行機	airplane
ふね	船	ship
でんしゃ	電車	electric train
ちかてつ	地下鉄	subway, underground
しんかんせん	新幹線	the Shinkansen, the bullet train
バス		bus
タクシー		taxi
じてんしゃ	自転車	bicycle
あるいて	歩いて	on foot
ひと	人	person, people
ともだち	友達	friend
かれ.	彼	he, boyfriend, lover
かのじょ	彼女	she, girlfriend, lover
かのじょ かぞく	彼女 家族	•
		she, girlfriend, lover
かぞく	家族	she, girlfriend, lover family
かぞく	家族	she, girlfriend, lover family
かぞく ひとりで	家族 一人で	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself
かぞく ひとりで せんしゅう	家族 一人で 先週	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself
かぞく ひとりで せんしゅう こんしゅう	家族 一人で 先週 今週	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself last week this week
かぞくひとりでせんしゅうらいしゅう	家族 一人で 先週 今週 来週	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself  last week this week next week
かぞくひとりでせんしゅうらいしゅうせんげつ	家一 先 う み 選 週 週 週 男 月	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself  last week this week next week last month
かぞくで せんしゅう こんしゅう もいしゅう せんげつ	家一 先今来先今 で 週週週月月	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself  last week this week next week last month this month
かぞく ひとして せんししがう らいんげつ らいげつ らいげつ	家一 先今来先今来族人 週週週月月月月	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself  last week this week next week last month this month next month
かぞとりで せこらいんだけばいいんいけばけばれんいよねん	家一 先今来先今来族人 週週週月月月月	she, girlfriend, lover family alone, by oneself  last week this week next week last month this month next month last year

- がつ	- 月	-th month of the year	
なんがつ	何月	what month	
ついたち	1日	first day of the month	
ふつか	2日	second, two days	
みっか	3 日	third, three days	
よっか	4 日	fourth, four days	5
いつか	5 日	fifth, five days	
むいか	6 日	sixth, six days	
なのか	7 日	seventh, seven days	
ようか	8日	eighth, eight days	
ここのか	9 日	ninth, nine days	
とおか	10日	tenth, ten days	
じゅうよっか	14日	fourteenth, fourteen days	
はつか	20日	twentieth, twenty days	
にじゅうよっか	24日	twenty fourth, twenty four days	
ーにち	- 日	-th day of the month, = days	
なんにち	何日	which day of the month, how many days	
117		when	37
たんじょうび	誕生日	birthday	
ふつう	普通	local (train)	
きゅうこう	急行	rapid	
とっきゅう	特急	express	
つぎの	次の	next	
△会話▷			
どう いたしまし -番線	て。	You're welcome./Don't mention it.	
- 番線		platform =,-th platform	
	veren	YVYVVVVVVVVVV	
博多		name of a town in Kyushu	
伏見		name of a town in Kyoto	
甲子園		name of a town near Osaka	

Osaka Castle, a famous castle in Osaka

### II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

- I. I [will] go to Kyoto.
- 2. I [will] go home by taxi.
- 3. I came to Japan with my family.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Where will you go tomorrow? ... I will go to Nara.
- 2. Where did you go last Sunday?
  - ··· I didn't go anywhere.
- 3. How will you go to Tokyo?
  - ... I will go by Shinkansen.
- 4. Who will you go to Tokyo with?
  - ··· I will go with Mr. Yamada.
- When did you come to Japan?
   I came here on March 25th.
- ··· I came here on wraten 250
- 6. When is your birthday? ... It is June 13th.

#### Conversation

### Does this train go to Koshien?

Santos: Excuse me. How much is it to Koshien?

Woman: It's 350 yen.

Santos: 350 yen? Thank you very much.

Woman: You're welcome.

\_\_\_\_\_

Santos: Excuse me. What platform is it for Koshien?

Station employee: No. 5. Santos: Thanks.

\_\_\_\_\_

Santos: Excuse me. Does this train go to Koshien?

Man: No, it doesn't. The next "local train" does.

Santos: Thank you very much.

5

### III. Reference Words & Information

# 祝祭日 NATIONAL HOLIDAYS



5



1月1日 1月第2月曜日** 2月11日 3月20日*	元 元 成 人 の 日 建国記念の 日 を を を の 日 を を の 日 を を の の の の に の の の の の の の の の の の の の	New Year's Day Coming-of-Age Day National Foundation Day Vernal Equinox Day		
4月29日	みどりの日 gastaited	Greenery Day		
5月3日	憲法記念日	Constitution Memorial Day		
5月4日	国民の休日	Nation's Day	<b>√</b> 1000000000000000000000000000000000000	
5月5日	こどもの日	Children's Day		39
7月20日	海の自	Marine Day		
9月15日	敬老の日	Respect-for-the-Aged Day		
9 月 23 日 *	秋分の日	Autumnal Equinox Day	THE WAS DELICIONED	
10月第2月曜日**	体育の日	Health and Sports Day	7925534 - 1 684 355 86 4 1	
11月3日	文化の自	Culture Day		
11月23日	勤労感謝の日	Labor Thanksgiving Day		
12月23日	天皇誕生日	The Emperor's Birthday	,	

- \* Varies from year to year.
- \*\* The second Monday



If a national holiday falls on a Sunday, the following Monday is taken off instead. From April 29th to May 5th is a series of holidays, called ゴールデンウィーク (Golden Week). Some big companies give a whole week's holiday to employees.

### IV. Grammar Explanation

## N(place) へ 行きます/来ます/帰ります

When a verb indicates movement to a certain place, the particle \(^{\sigma}\) is put after the place noun to show the direction of the move.

① 京都へ 行きます。

I will go to Kyoto.

② 日本へ 来ました。

I came to Japan.

③ うちへ 帰ります。

I will go home.

[Note] The particle ^ is read え.

## 2. |どこ[へ]も 行きません/行きませんでした

When an interrogative takes the particle  $\stackrel{\cdot}{\leftarrow}$  and the verb following it is negative, all that is represented by the interrogative is denied.

④ どこ[へ]も 行きません。

I don't go anywhere.

⑤ 何も 食べません。

I don't eat anything. (L. 6)

⑥ だれも いません。

Nobody is there. (L. 10)

## 3. N(vehicle)で行きます/来ます/帰ります

The particle T indicates a means or a method. When verbs denoting movement (いきます、きます、かえります, etc.) are used with で、で indicates a means of transportation. The noun preceding T is a vehicle in this case.

⑦ 電車で 行きます。

I'll go by train.

⑧ タクシーで 来ました。

I came by taxi.

When you walk somewhere, you use the expression あるいて. In this case, T is not used.

⑨ 駅から 歩いて 帰りました。

I walked home from the station.

## 4. N(person/animal) と V

When you do something with a person (or an animal), the person (or the animal) is marked with the particle  $\angle$ .

⑩ 家族と 日本へ 来ました。

I came to Japan with my family.

If you do something alone, the expression ひとりで is used. In this case, と is not used.

① 一人で 東京へ 行きます。 I'll go to Tokyo alone.

40

### 5. いつ

To ask about time, the interrogatives using  $t\lambda$  such as  $t\lambda U$ ,  $t\lambda U$  and  $t\lambda U$  are used. Other than these, the interrogative t (when) is also used to ask when something will happen/happened. t does not take the particle t.

- ② いつ 日本へ 来ましたか。 …3月25日に 来ました。
- ③ いつ 広島へ 行きますか。 …来週 行きます。

When did you come to Japan? ... I came on March 25th.

When will you go to Hiroshima?

···I'll go there next week.

## 6. S L

 $\downarrow$  is placed at the end of a sentence. It is used to emphasize information which the listener does not know, or to show that you are giving your judgement or views assertively.

① この 電車は 甲子園へ 行きますか。…いえ、行きません。次の 普通ですよ。

Does this train go to Koshien?

... No, it doesn't. The next local train does.

⑤ 無理な ダイエットは 体に よくないですよ。 Excessive dieting is bad for your health. (L. 19)

41

# Vocabulary

. » L L	A	
たべます	食べます	eat
のみます	飲みます	drink
すいます	吸います	smoke [a cigarette]
[たばこを ~]		
みます	見ます	see, look at, watch
ききます	聞きます	hear, listen
よみます	読みます	read
	書きます	write, draw, paint
	買います	buy
とります	撮ります	take [a photograph]
[しゃしんを~]		take ta photographi
	「子兵と「」	1-
します	A++	do
あいます		meet [a friend]
[ともだちに ~]	[友達に~]	
<b>.</b>		
ごはん		a meal, cooked rice
	朝ごはん	breakfast
ひるごはん	昼ごはん	lunch
ばんごはん	晩ごはん	supper
パン		bread
たまご	ЙЫ	egg
にく	肉	meat
さかな	魚	fish
やさい	野菜	vegetable
くだもの	果物	fruit
( ) 2 0 4 /	>/C 10	Tiutt
みず	水	water
おちゃ	がお茶	water
		tea, green tea
こうちゃ	紅茶	black tea
ぎゅうにゅう	牛乳	milk
(ミルク)		
ジュース		juice
ビール		beer
[お]さけ	[お]酒	alcohol, Japanese rice wine

ビデオ		video tape, video deck	
えいが	映画	movie	
CD		CD, compact disc	
てがみ	手紙	letter	
レポート		report	
しゃしん	写真	photograph	
みせ	店	store, shop	
レストラン		restaurant	
にわ	庭	garden	askonnan
		·	6
しゅくだい	宿題	homework (~をします: do homework)	
テニス		tennis (~をします: play tennis)	
サッカー		soccer, football	
		(~をします: play soccer)	
[お]はなみ	[お]花見	cherry-blossom viewing	
	_ · · _ · · · ·	(~をします: go cherry-blossom viewing)	
なに	何	what	
いっしょに		together	43
ちょっと		a little while, a little bit	
いつも		always, usually	
ときどき	時々	sometimes	
それから		after that, and then	
ええ		yes	
いいですね。		That's good.	
わかりました。		I see.	
△会話▷			
何ですか。	. 4	Yes?	
じゃ、また[あしぇ	<u></u>	See you [tomorrow].	
	*****	VVVVVVVVVVVV	
メキシコ		Mexico	
大阪城公園		Osaka Castle park	
The state of the s		<b>k</b>	

### II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I drink juice.
- 2. I buy a newspaper at the station.
- 3. Won't you come to Kobe with me?
- 4. Let's take a rest for a little bit.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Do you smoke?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 2. What do you eat every morning?
  - ... I have egg and toast.
- 3. What did you eat this morning?
  - ... I didn't eat anything.
- 4. What did you do last Saturday?
  - ··· I studied Japanese. Then I saw a movie.
  - On Sunday what did you do?
  - ... I went to Nara with a friend.
- 5. Where did you buy that bag?
  - ··· I bought it in Mexico.
- 6. Won't you drink some beer with me?
  - ... Yes, let's have a drink.

#### Conversation

### Won't you join us?

Sato: Mr. Miller.

Miller: Yes?

Sato: I'm going to enjoy cherry-blossom viewing with my

friends tomorrow.

Won't you join us, Mr. Miller?

Miller: That sounds nice. Where will you go?

Sato: Osakajo-Koen. Miller: What time?

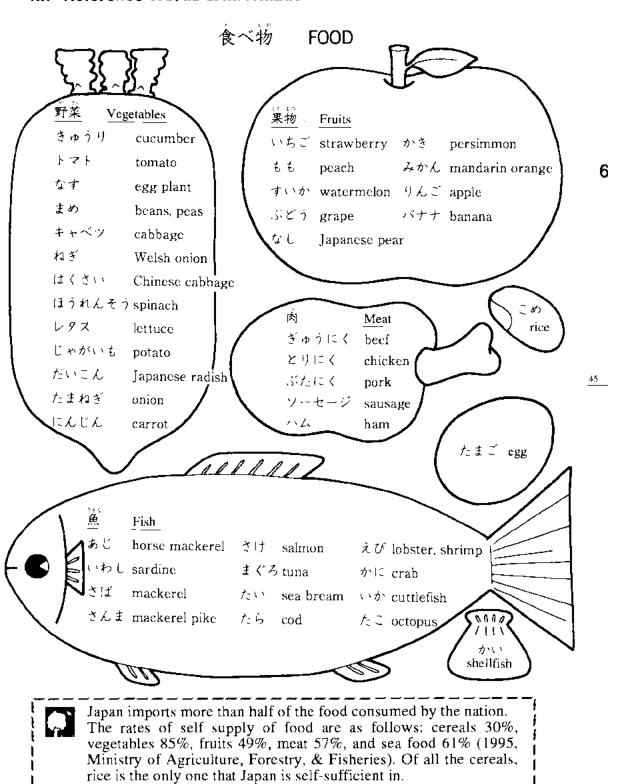
Sato: At ten o'clock. Let's meet at Osakajo-Koen Station.

Miller: OK.

Sato: Well, see you tomorrow.

44

### III. Reference Words & Information



## IV. Grammar Explanation

## 1, Nを V(transitive)

E is used to indicate the direct object of a transitive verb.

① ジュースを 飲みます。

I drink juice.

[Note]  $\xi$  and  $\beta$  are pronounced the same. The former is used only in writing the particle.

## 2. [Nを します]

The words used as the objects of the verb  $\cup \sharp \dagger$  cover a fairly wide range. Lit means that the action denoted by the noun is performed. Some examples are shown below.

1) to "play" sports or games

サッカーを します play football トランプを します play cards

2) to "hold" gatherings

パーティーを します give a party 会議を します hold a meeting

3) to "do" something

do homework 宿題を します 仕事を します do one's work

## 3. 何を しますか

This is a question to ask what someone does.

② 月曜日 何を しますか。 What will you do on Monday?

…京都へ 行きます。

···I'll go to Kyoto. What did you do yesterday?

③ きのう 何を しましたか。 …サッカーを しました。

··· I played football.

[Note] You can make a word expressing time the topic by adding [1].

④ 月曜日は 何を しますか。 …京都へ 行きます。

On Monday what will you do?

···I'll go to Kyoto.

### 4. なん and なに

Both なん and なに mean "what."

1) なん is used in the following cases.

- (1) When it precedes a word whose first mora is either in the  $t_z$ ,  $t_z^z$  or
  - ⑤ それは 何ですか。

What is that?

⑥ 何の 本ですか。

What is the book about?

⑦ 嬉る まえに、荷と言いますか。

What do you say before going to bed? (L. 21)

46

- (2) When it is followed by a counter suffix or the like.
- ⑧ テレサちゃんは 何歳ですか。 How old is Teresa?
- 2) なに is used in all other cases.
  - ⑨ 何を 買いますか。

What will you buy?

## 5. N(place)で V

When added after a noun denoting a place, T indicates the place where an action occurs.

⑩ 駅で 新聞を 買います。

I buy the newspaper at the station.

### 6. **V**ませんか

When you want to invite someone to do something, this expression is used.

- ① いっしょに 京都へ 行きませんか。
  - …ええ、いいですね。

Won't you come to Kyoto with us?

···That's a nice idea.

## 7. **V**ましょう ]

This expression is used when a speaker is positively inviting the listener to do something with the speaker. It is also used when responding positively to an invitation.

- ⑫ ちょっと 休みましょう。 Let's have a break.
- ③ いっしょに 登ごはんを 食べませんか。…ええ、食べましょう。

Won't you have lunch with me?

···Yes, let's go and eat.

[Note] An invitation using  $V \not\equiv U \land h$  shows more consideration to the listener's will than that using  $V \not\equiv U \not\equiv h$ .

#### 8. \*a~

You learned in Lesson 3 that the prefix 3 is attached to words regarding the listener or the person being referred to to show respect (e.g., 3) 4 country).

お is also attached to various other words when the speaker is speaking politely (e.g., [お] さけ alcohol, [お]はなみ cherry-blossom viewing).

There are some words that are usually used with お without meaning respect or politeness (e.g., おちゃ tea, おかね money).

6

# I. Vocabulary

きおあもかかおなか りくげらしりしらけ すますますすままでいま すす すっすする で で で で で で で で で で で で で で で で で で	切送 (貸借教習) しりえい ままままま でごぎます で話を~]	cut, slice send give receive lend borrow teach learn make [a telephone call]
て はし スプーン ナイフ フォーク はさみ	手	hand, arm chopsticks spoon knife fork scissors
ファクス ワープロ パソコン		fax word processor personal computer
パンチ ホッチキス セロテープ けしゴム かみ	消しゴム 紙	punch stapler Scotch tape, clear adhesive tape eraser paper
はな シャツ プレゼント にもつ おかね きっぷ	花 荷物 お金 切符	flower, blossom shirt present, gift baggage, parcel money ticket
クリスマス		Christmas

. 55	父	(my) father	
はは	4	(my) mother	
おとうさん	お父さん	(someone else's) father	
おかあさん	お母さん	(someone else's) mother	
もう		already	
まだ		not yet	
これから		from now on, soon	
[~、]すてきです;	<b>扫</b> 。	What a nice [∼]!	7
△会話♪			
ごめんください。		Excuse me./Anybody home?/May I come	
		in? (an expression used by a visitor)	
いらっしゃい。		How nice of you to come. (lit. Welcome.)	
どうぞ お上がり	ください。	Do come in.	
失礼します。		Thank you./May 1? (lit. I'm afraid I'll be	
		disturbing you.)	
[~は] いかがです	けか。	Won't you have [ $\sim$ ]?/Would you like to	
		have [~]? (used when offering something)	49
いただきます。		Thank you./I accept. (said before starting	
1.2 E 1		to eat or drink)	
旅行		trip, tour	
お土産		(~を します: travel, make a trip)	
お土産		souvenir, present	
1	*******	VVVVVVVVVVVVV	
ヨーロッパ		Europe	
スペイン		Spain	

#### II. **Translation**

### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I write letters with a word processor.
- 2. I [will] give some flowers to Ms. Kimura.
- 3. I received some chocolates from Ms. Karina.

### Example Sentences

7

\_. 50

- 1. Did you study Japanese through television? ... No, I studied it through radio.
- 2. Do you write reports in Japanese?
  - ... No. I write them in English.
- 3. What is "Good-bye" in Japanese?
- ...It is "Sayonara."
- 4. Who will you write Christmas cards to? ···To my family and friends.
- 5. What is that?
  - ···It's a pocket notebook. I received it from Mr. Yamada.
- 6. Have you bought your Shinkansen ticket?
  - ··· Yes, I have.
- 7. Have you finished lunch?
  - ... No, not yet. I am going to eat now.

#### Conversation

#### Hello

Jose Santos:

Hello.

Yamada Ichiro:

Hello. Please come in.

Jose Santos:

Thank you.

\_\_\_\_\_

Yamada Tomoko: How about a cup of coffee?

Maria Santos:

Thank you.

\_\_\_\_\_ Yamada Tomoko: Here you are.

Maria Santos:

Thank you.

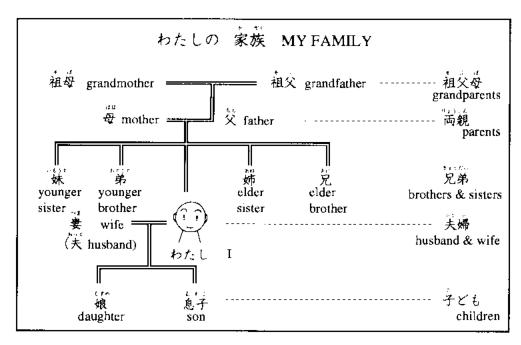
This spoon is nice, isn't it?

Yamada Tomoko: Yes, it is. Someone in my company gave it to me.

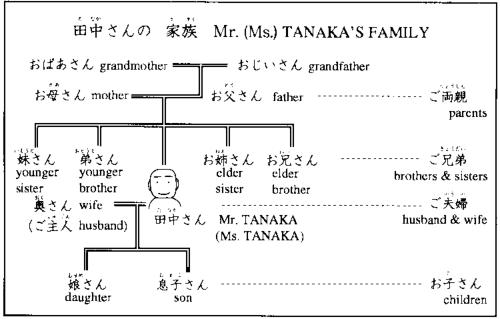
It's a souvenir of her trip to Europe.

## III. Reference Words & Information

家族 FAMILY



7



### IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. 「N(tool/means)で V

The particle  $\mathcal{T}$  indicates a method or a mean used for an action.

① はしで 食べます。

I eat with chopsticks.

② 日本語で レポートを 書きます。 I write a report in Japanese.

## 2. "Word/Sentence" は ~語で 何ですか

This question is used to ask how to say a word or a sentence in other languages.

- ③「ありがとう」は 英語で 何ですか。
  - ···「Thank you」です。

What's "ありがとう" in English?

- ··· It's "Thank you."
- ④「Thank you」は 日本語で 何ですか。

…「ありがとう」です。

What's "Thank you" in Japanese?

… It's " ありがとう."

## 3. N(person) に あげます, etc.

Verbs like  $\delta$  it  $\delta$ ,  $\delta$  it  $\delta$ ,  $\delta$  is  $\delta$ ,  $\delta$  it  $\delta$ ,  $\delta$  it is etc., need persons to whom you give, lend, teach, etc. The persons are marked with  $\delta$ .

- ⑤ 山田さんは 木村さんに 花を あげました。 Mr. Yamada gave flowers to Ms. Kimura.
- ⑥ イーさんに 苯を 貸しました。

I lent my book to Ms. Lee.

⑦ 太郎君に 英語を 教えます。

I teach Taro English.

[Note] With verbs like  $\beta \in \mathcal{N}$  at  $\beta \in \mathcal{N}$  with  $\beta \in \mathcal{N}$  the particle  $\beta \in \mathcal{N}$  is sometimes used instead of  $\beta \in \mathcal{N}$ .

⑧ 会社に 電話を かけます。(へ)

I'll call my office.

52

## 4. N(person) に もらいます, etc.

Verbs like  $t \in S$  is  $t \in S$ ,  $t \in S$  and  $t \in S$  express actions from the receiving side. The persons from whom you receive those actions are marked with  $t \in S$ .

- ⑨ 木料さんは 苗亩さんに 花を もらいました。
  - Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.
- ⑩ カリナさんに CDを 借りました。 I borrowed a CD from Ms. Karina.
- ① ワンさんに 中国語を 響います。

I learn Chinese from Mr. Wang.

b is sometimes used instead of 1 in this sentence pattern. When you receive something from an organization like a school or a company, only b is used.

- ⑩ 未給さんは 富亩さんから 花を もらいました。
  - Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.
- ③ 銀行から お金を 借りました。
  I borrowed some money from the bank.

## **5.** [もう **V**ました

 $\pm$  3 means "already" and is used with  $V \pm L \hbar$ . In this case,  $V \pm L \hbar$  means that the action has been finished.

The answer to the question 6 or 6 V 6 U 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V 6 V

④ もう 荷物を 送りましたか。 Have you sent the parcel yet? …はい、[もう] 送りました。 …Yes, I have [already sent it]. …いいえ、まだです。 …No, not yet.

In giving a negative answer to this type of question, you should not use  $V \notin \mathcal{L} \subset \mathcal{L}_{\tau}$ , as this simply means you did not do the specified task rather than you have not done it yet.

7

# I. Vocabulary

ハンサム[な] されい[な] にざかか[な] にがかい[な] しんとして がしたと な] でした で がして で が した と した と した と した と した と した と した と した	静か[な] 有名[な] 親切[な] 元気[な] 便利[な]	handsome beautiful, clean quiet lively famous kind healthy, sound, cheerful free (time) convenient fine, nice, wonderful
おおきい	大きい	big, large
ちいさい	小さい	small, little
あたらしい	新しい	new
ふるい	古い	old (not of age)
· · · · (1 · · · )		good
わるい	悪い	bad
あつい	暑い、熱い	hot
さむい	寒い	cold (referring to temperature)
つめたい	冷たい	cold (referring to touch)
むずかしい	難しい	difficult
やさしい	易しい	easy
たかい	高い	expensive, tall, high
やすい	安い	inexpensive
ひくい	低い	low
おもしろい		interesting
おいしい		delicious, tasty
いそがしい	忙しい	busy
たのしい	楽しい	enjoyable
しろい	白い	white
くろい	黒い	black
あかい	赤い	red
あおい	青()	blue
さくら	桜	cherry (blossom)
やま	山	mountain

まち	<b>m</b> 1	town, city	
たべもの	食べ物	food	
くるま	車	car, vehicle	
ところ	所	place	
りょう	寮	dormitory	
べんきょう	勉強	study	
せいかつ	生活	life	1118111111811111
[お] しごと	[お]仕事	work, business	8
		(~をします: do one's job, work)	
どう		how	
どんな~		what kind of $\sim$	
r'h		which one (of three or more)	
とても		very	
あまり		not so (used with negatives)	
そして		and (used to connect sentences)	
<b>~</b> が、~		$\sim$ , but $\sim$	55
おげんきですか。	お元気ですか。	How are you?	
そうですね。		Well let me see. (pausing)	
△会話▷			
日本の 生活に 慣れ	しましたか。		
[~、]もう 一杯 い		Won't you have another cup of $[\sim]$ ?	
いいえ、けっこうて	です。	No, thank you.	
もう~です[ね]。		It's already ∼[, isn't it?].	
そろそろ 失礼しま	す。	It's almost time to leave now.	
また いらっしゃっ	てください。	Please come again.	
	*******	WWWWWWWWW	
富士山		Mt. Fuji, the highest mountain in Japan	
		Lake Biwa, the biggest lake in Japan	
シャンハイ		Shanghai (上海)	
「七人の侍」		"The Seven Samurai," a classic movie by	
e work ti		Akira Kurosawa	

Kinkakuji Temple (the Golden Pavilion)

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Cherry blossoms are beautiful.
- 2. Mt. Fuji is high.
- 3. Cherry blossoms are beautiful flowers.
- 4. Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.

### Example Sentences

- 1. Is Osaka lively?
  - ···Yes, it is.
- 2. Is the water of Lake Biwa clean?
  - ... No, it is not so clean.
- 3. Is it cold in Beijing now?
  - ···Yes, it is very cold.

Is it cold in Shanghai, too?

- ... No, it is not so cold.
- 4. Is that dictionary good?
  - ...No, it is not so good.
- 5. How do you like the subway in Tokyo?
  - ... It is clean. And it is convenient.
- 6. I saw a movie yesterday.
  - ···What kind of movie was it?

It was "The Seven Samurai." It is old, but a very interesting movie.

- 7. Which is Mr. Miller's umbrella?
  - ... That blue one is.

#### Conversation

#### It's almost time to leave

Yamada Ichiro: Have you got accustomed to living in Japan, Maria?

\_\_\_\_\_

Yes, I have. I enjoy it every day. Maria Santos:

Yamada Ichiro: Really? Mr. Santos, how is your work?

Well, it's busy, but interesting. Jose Santos:

Yamada Tomoko: Would you like another cup of coffee?

Maria Santos: No, thank you. \_\_\_\_\_

Oh, it's eight o'clock now. We must be going. Jose Santos:

You must? Yamada Ichiro:

Thank you for everything today. Maria Santos: Yamada Tomoko: Our pleasure. Please come again.

### III. Reference Words & Information

# 色·妹 COLOR & TASTE

## 色 Color

noun	adjective	noun	adjective
🛱 white	首い	黄色 yellow	黄色い
黑 black	黒い	茶色 brown	茶色い
赤 red	赤い	ピンク pink	
青 blue	青八	オレンジ orange	
線 green		グレー gray	<u> </u>
紫 purple		ベージュ beige	

8

57

味 Taste

甘い sweet



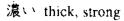
辛い hot 苦い bitter



塩辛い salty

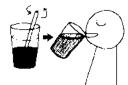


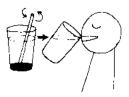
酸っぱい sour









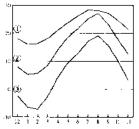




# 春·夏·秋·冬 Spring Summer Autumn Winter

There are four seasons in Japan, spring (March, April, May), summer (June, July, August), autumn (September, October, November), and winter (December, January, February). The average temperature varies from place to place, but the change patterns are almost the same (see the graph).

The hottest month is August and the coldest, January or February. So Japanese people feel that "summer is hot," "autumn is cool," "winter is cold," and "spring is warm."



- (I) NAHA (OKINAWA)
- ② ΤΟΚΥΟ
- ③ ABASHIRI (HOKKAIDO)

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Adjectives

8

58

Adjectives are used as 1) predicates and 2) noun modifiers. They inflect and are divided into two groups,  $\mathcal{N}$ -adjectives and  $\mathcal{L}$ -adjectives, according to the inflection.

- 2. Nは な-adj [な] です Nは い-adj (~い)です
- 1)  $\mathcal{C}$  at the end of an adjective sentence shows the speaker's polite attitude toward the listener. An  $\mathcal{C}$ -adjective with  $\mathcal{C}$  at the end comes before  $\mathcal{C}$ , whereas a  $\mathcal{C}$ -adjective without  $[\mathcal{C}]$  comes before  $\mathcal{C}$   $\mathcal{C}$ .

① ワット先生は 親切です。

Mr. Watt is kind.

②富士山は高いです。

Mt. Fuji is high.

TT is used when a sentence is non-past and affirmative.

2) な-adj [な] じゃ ありません

The negative form of な-adj [な] です is な-adj [な] じゃ ありません. (な-adj [な] では ありません)

③ あそこは 静か<u>じゃ ありません</u>。 It's not quiet there. (では)

3) い-adj (~い) です→~くないです

To make the negative form of an  $\cdots$  adjective,  $\cdots$  at the end of the  $\cdots$ -adjective is altered to  $\langle t t \rangle$ .

④ この 本は おもしろくないです。 This book is not interesting.

The negative for いいです is よくないです.

4) Questions using adjective sentences are made in the same way as those using noun or verb sentences. In answering a question, you repeat the adjective used in the question. そうです or そうじゃ ありません cannot be used.

⑤ ペキンは、寒いですか。 …はい、寒いです。 Is it cold in Beijing?

···Yes, it is.

- ⑥ 琵琶湖の 永は きれいですか。 Is the water of Lake Biwa clean? …いいえ、きれいじゃ ありません。…No, it isn't.
- 3. な-adjな N い-adj (~い) N

An adjective is put before a noun to modify it. A \$\tau\_{\text{-adjective needs}}\$ \$\tau\_{\text{before a noun.}}\$

⑦ ワット先生は 親切な 先生です。

Mr. Watt is a kind teacher.

⑧ 富士山は 高い 山です。

Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.

## 4. とても/あまり

とても and あまり are adverbs of degree. Both come before the adjectives they are modifying.

とても is used in affirmative sentences, and means "very." あまり is used in negative sentences. あまり and a negative form mean "not very."

⑨ ペキンは とても 寒いです。

Beijing is very cold.

⑩ これは とても 有名な 映画です。

This is a very famous movie.

⑪ シャンハイは あまり 寒くないです。

Shanghai is not very cold.

⑫ さくら天学は あまり 有名な 天学じゃ ありません。

Sakura University is not a very famous university.

### 5. Nは どうですか

This question is used to ask an impression or an opinion about a thing, place or person, etc., that the listener has experienced, visited or met.

③ 日本の 生活は どうですか。 How is the life in Japan? …楽しいです。 …It's enjoyable.

## 6. N₁は どんな N₂ですか!

When the speaker wants the listener to describe or explain  $N_0$ , this question pattern is used. N2 denotes the category N1 belongs to. The interrogative どんな is always followed by a noun.

④ 奈良は どんな 町ですか。…古い 町です。

What kind of town is Nara?

···It's an old town.

## 7. S, が、S<sub>2</sub>

 $\phi^{s}$  is a conjunctive particle, meaning "but." It is used to link sentences.

⑤ 日本の 食べ物は おいしいですが、高いです。

Japanese food is good, but expensive.

#### 8. どれ

This interrogative is used to ask the listener to choose or designate one from more than two things concretely shown or named.

⑥ ミラーさんの 傘は どれですか。Which is Mr. Miller's umbrella? …あの 青い 傘です。 …That blue one is.

8

# Lesson 9

# I. Vocabulary

わかります		understand
あります		have
すき[な]	好き[な]	like
きらい[な]	嫌い[な]	dislike
じょうず[な]	上手[な]	good at
へた[な]	下手[な]	poor at
		1
りょうり	料理	dish (cooked food), cooking
のみもの	飲み物	drinks
スポーツ		sport (~をします: play sports)
やきゅう	野球	baseball (~をします: play baseball)
ダンス		dance (~をします: dance)
おんがく	音楽	music
うた	歌	song
クラシック		classical music
ジャズ		jazz
コンサート		concert
カラオケ		karaoke
かぶき	歌舞伎	Kabuki (traditional Japanese musical
		drama)
え	絵	picture, drawing
		•
ľ	字	letter, character
かんじ	漢字	Chinese characters
ひらがな		Hiragana script
かたかな		Katakana script
ローマじ	ローマ字	the Roman alphabet
		•
こまかい おかね	細かい お金	small change
チケット		ticket
-		
じかん	時間	time
ようじ	用事	something to do, errand
やくそく	約束	appointment, promise
, ,	1 -	II

ごしゅじん ご主人 (someone else's) husband おっと/しゅじん 夫/主人 (my) husband おくさん 奥さん (someone else's) wife つま/かない 要/家内 (my) wife こども 子ども child よく well, much だいたい mostly, roughly たくさん many, much すこし 少し a little, a few ぜんぜん 全然 not at all (used with negatives) 早く、速く はやく early, quickly, fast ~から because ~ どうして why ざんねんです[ね]。残念です[ね]。 I'm sorry (to hear that)./That's a pity. すみません。 I am sorry. 4会話♪ 61 もしもし hello (used on the phone) ああ oh いっしょにいかがですか。 Won't you join me (us)? [~は] ちょっと……。 [~] is a bit difficult. (an euphemism used when declining an invitation) だめですか。 So you cannot (come)? また 今度 お願いします。 Please ask me again some other time. (used when refusing an invitation indirectly, considering someone's feelings) 

famous Japanese conductor (1935 = )

小沢 征爾

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I like Italian cuisine.
- 2. I understand Japanese a little.
- 3. Today is my child's birthday, so I will go home early.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Do you like alcohol?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 2. What kind of sports do you like?
  - ···I like soccer.
- 3. Is Ms. Karina good at drawing pictures?
  - ···Yes, she is very good at it.
- 4. Do you understand Indonesian, Mr. Tanaka?
  - ... No, I do not understand it at all.
- 5. Do you have any small change?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 6. Do you read newspapers every morning?
  - ... No, as I don't have the time, I don't.
- 7. Why did you go home early yesterday?
  - ···Because I had something to do.

#### Conversation

#### That's too bad

Miller: Hello. This is Miller.

Kimura: It's you, Mr. Miller. Good evening. How are you?

Miller: Fine. Thank you.

Well, Ms. Kimura. How would you like to go to a

concert by Seiji Ozawa?

Kimura: That sounds nice. When will it be?
Miller: It's on Friday night of next week.

Kimura: Friday?

Friday's a bit difficult.

Miller: So you can't come?

Kimura: I have arranged to meet a friend on Friday night.

Miller: You have. I'm sorry to hear that.

Kimura: I am, too. Please invite me again some other time.

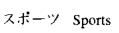
62

# III. Reference Words & Information

音楽・スポーツ・映画 MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES

音楽 Music	Que,
ポップス	pop
ロック	rock
ジャズ	jazz
ラテン	Latin American music
クラシック	classical music
民謡	folk music
演歌	traditional Japanese popular songs
ミュージカル	musical
オペラ	opera

	映画 Film	
	SF	SF film
	ホラー	horror film
	アニメ	animated film
c	ドキュメンタリー	documentary film
	恋爱	romantic film
	ミステリー	mystery film
	文芸	movie based on a
	# i. t. 1	classic work
	戦争	war film
	アクション	action film
	喜劇	comedy film









ソフトボール サッカー ラグビー バスケーボール パスケットボール ボーリング スキー スケート	softball	野球	baseball
サッカー	soccer	卓球/ピンポン	ping-pong
ラグビー	rugby football	相撲	sumo
バレーボール	volleyball	柔道	judo
パスケットボール	basketball	剣道	Japanese fencing
テニス	tennis	水泳	swimming
ボーリング	bowling		
スキー	skiing		
スケート	skating		
X7 - F	skating		·

## IV. Grammar Explanation

## 1. Nが あります/わかります Nが 好きです/嫌いです/上手です/下手です

The object of a transitive verb is marked with  $\mathcal{E}$ . However, objects of the verbs  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  are marked with  $\mathcal{E}$ .

Such adjectives as t 
otin 
otin

- ① わたしは イタリア料理が 好きです。 Ilike:
  - I like Italian food.
- ② わたしは 日本語が わかります。
- I understand Japanese.
- ③ わたしは 車が あります。
- I have a car.

### 2. どんな N

Other than the usage you learned in Lesson 8,  $\angle \mathcal{L} t$  is also used to ask the listener to name one from a group which the noun after  $\angle \mathcal{L} t$  denotes.

- ④ どんな スポーツが 好きですか。…サッカーが 好きです。
- What sports do you like? ...! like football.

# 3. よく/だいたい/たくさん/少し/あまり/全然

These adverbs are put before verbs when they modify them. The following is a summary of their usage.

degree	adverb + affirmative	adverb + negative
high	よく わかります	
	だいたい わかります	
♦ low	すこし わかります	あまり わかりません
		ぜんぜん わかりません

amount	adverb + affirmative	adverb + negative
å large	たくさん あります	
small	すこし あります	あまり ありません
		ぜんぜん ありません

⑤ 英語が よく わかります。

I understand English very well.

⑥ 英語が 少し わかります。

I understand English a little.

② 英語が あまり わかりません。 I don't understand English so well.

⑧ お金が たくさん あります。

I have a lot of money.

⑨ お金が 全然 ありません。

I don't have any money.

[Note] すこし and ぜんぜん can also modify adjectives.

⑩ ここは 少し 寒いです。

It's a little cold here.

① あの 映画は 全然 おもしろくないです。

That movie is not interesting at all.

9

## 4. S. Mb. Sz

から connects two sentences together to denote a causal relationship. Si is the reason for S z.

⑫ 時間が ありませんから、新聞を 読みません。

Because I don't have time, I don't read the newspaper. You can also state S<sub>2</sub> first and add the reason after it.

③ 毎朝 新聞を 読みますか。

…いいえ、読みません。時間が ありませんから。

Do you read a newspaper every morning?

... No, I don't. Because I have no time.

5. どうして

The interrogative どうして is used to ask a reason. The answer needs から at

④ どうして 朝 新聞を 読みませんか。

…時間がありませんから。

Why don't you read a newspaper in the morning?

···Because I don't have time.

The question どうしてですか is also used to ask the reason for what the other person has said.

頂 きょうは 早く 帰ります。

I'll go home early today.

…どうしてですか。

···Whv?

子どもの 誕生日ですから。

Because today's my child's birthday.

6.5

# Lesson 10

## I. Vocabulary

います exist, be (referring to animate things) あります exist, be (referring to inanimate things) いろいろ[な] various おとこの ひと 男の 人 man おんなの ひと 女の 入 woman おとこの こ 男の 子 boy おんなの こ 女の 子 girl 犬 116 dog ねこ 猫 cat ŧ 木 tree, wood もの 物 thing フィルム film でんち 電池 battery はこ 箱 box スイッチ switch れいぞうこ 冷蔵庫 refrigerator テーブル table ベッド bed たな 棚 shelf ドア door まど 窓 window ポスト mailbox, postbox ビル building こうえん 公園 park きっさてん 喫茶店 coffee shop ほんや 本屋 bookstore

 $\sim$  store

prefecture

a fixed place to catch taxis, trains, etc.

66

~ 47

けん

のりば

~屋

県

乗り場

うえ	上	on, above, over	
した	平	under, below, beneath	
まえ	前	front, before	
うしろ		back, behind	
みぎ	右	right [side]	
ひだり	左	left [side]	
なか	中	in, inside	
そと	<b>ያ</b> ኑ	outside	
となり	隣	next, next door	
ちかく	近く	near, vicinity	10
あいだ	間	between, among	
~や ~[など	]	$\sim$ , $\sim$ , and so on	
いちばん ~		the most ~ (いちばん うえ: the top)	
ーだんめ	- 段目	the -th shelf ( $f$ : $k$ is the counter for	
		shelves)	
△会話▷			
[どうも] すみ	×ません。	Thank you.	
チリソース *** <b>奥</b>		chili sauce	67
** <b>!!</b>		the back	•
スパイス・コ	ーナー	spice corner	
	www	vvvvvvvvvvv	
東京ディズニ	ーランド	Tokyo Disneyland	
ユニューヤ・	ストア	fictitious supermarket	

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Ms. Sato is over there.
- 2. There is a photo on the desk.
- 3. My family is in New York.
- 4. Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

### **Example Sentences**

10

- 1. You see that man over there. Who is that?
  - ... He is Mr. Matsumoto of IMC.
- 2. Is there a telephone near here?
  - ... Yes, it is over there.
- 3. Who is in the garden?
  - ... Nobody is. There is a cat.
- 4. What is there in the box?
  - ... There are old letters and photos and so on.
- 5. Where is Mr. Miller?
  - ...He is in the meeting room.
- 6. Where is the post office?
  - ...It is near the station. It is in front of the bank.

### Conversation

### Do you have chili sauce in this store?

Miller: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya Store?

Woman: Yunyu-ya Store?

You see that white building over there?

The store is in that building.

Miller: I see. Thank you.

Woman: Not at all.

\_\_\_\_\_

Miller: Excuse me, do you have chili sauce?

Shop assistant: Yes

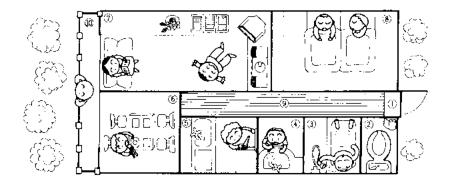
There is a spice corner on the right-hand side at the back.

Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom.

Miller: I see, Thanks.

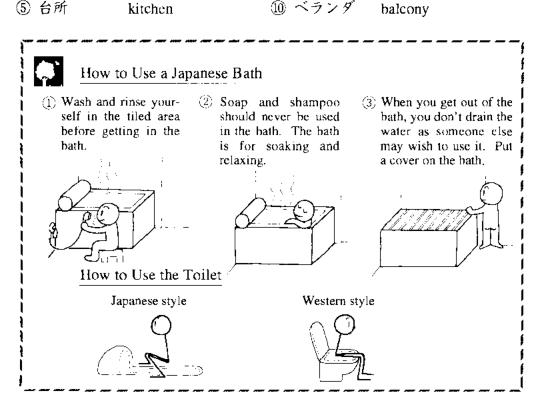
## III. Reference Words & Information

# うちの中 INSIDE THE HOUSE



10

(1)	玄関	entrance hall	⑥ 食堂	dining room
2	トイレ	toilet	⑦ 居間	living room
3	風呂場	bathroom	8 寝室	bedroom
4	洗面所	washroom	⑨ 爺卞	hallway
<u>_</u>	1000			



### IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Nが あります/います

This sentence pattern is used to indicate the existence or presence of a thing(s) or person(s). The thing(s) or person(s) in such a sentence is treated as the subject and marked with the particle が.

- 1) あります is used when what is present is inanimate or does not move by itself. Things, plants and places belong in this category.
  - ① コンピューターが あります。

There is a computer.

② 桜が あります。

There are cherry trees.

③ 公園が あります。

There is a park.

- 2) When what is present is animate and moves by itself, います is used. People and animals belong in this category.
  - ④ 男の 人が います。

There is a man.

⑤ 犬が います。

There is a dog.

## 2. N (place) に N₂が あります/います

- 1) The place where  $N_2$  is present is indicated by the particle  $\mathbb{C}$ .
  - ⑥ わたしの 部屋に 机が あります。 There is a desk in my room.
  - ⑦ 事務所に ミラーさんが います。

Mr. Miller is in the office.

- 2) You can ask what or who is present at/in the place by using this pattern. The interrogative t is used for things and t is used for persons.
  - ⑧ 地下に 何が ありますか。

What is there in the basement?

…未材さんが います。

...Ms. Kimura is there.

## 3. N₁は N₂(place)に あります/います

- 1) In this sentence pattern, the speaker picks up  $N_1$  as the topic, and explains where it is. The topic should be something or someone that both the speaker and the listener know about. The particle attached to  $N_1$  is not  $\delta^3$ , which marks the subject, but 11, which marks the topic.
  - (10) 東京ディズニーランドは 千葉県に あります。

Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

- ① ミラーさんは 事務所に います。 Mr. Miller is in the office.
- 2) When you ask where N<sub>1</sub> is, this sentence pattern is used.
  - ⑫ 東京ディズニーランドは どこに ありますか。

…千葉県に あります。

Where is Tokyo Disneyland?

...It's in Chiba Prefecture.

③ ミラーさんは どこに いますか。 Where is Mr. Miller?

…事務所に います。

···He's in the office.

70

[Note]  $\mathcal{T}f$  is sometimes used to replace a verb predicate when the predicate is obvious. The sentence  $N_1$  (I  $N_2$ (place)  $\mathcal{T}f$  by  $\mathcal{T}f$  can be replaced by the sentence  $N_1$  (I  $N_2$ (place)  $\mathcal{T}f$ , which you learned in Lesson 3.

- ④ 東京ディズニーランドは どこに ありますか。
  - …千葉県です。

Where is Tokyo Disneyland?

...It's in Chiba Prefecture.

### 4. N<sub>1</sub>(thing/person/place) O N<sub>2</sub>(position)

うえ, した, まえ, うしろ, みぎ, ひだり, なか, そと, となり, ちかく and あいだ are nouns denoting position.

- ⑤ 机の 上に 写真が あります。 There is a picture on the desk.
- ⑥ 郵便局は銀行の 隣にあります。 The post office is next to the bank. [Note] As these are place nouns, not only に but also particles like で can come after them.
  - ⑰ 駅の 近くで 友達に 会いました。 I met a friend near the station.

## 5. N, や N2

Nouns are connected in coordinate relation by the particle  $\overset{\sim}{\sim}$ . While  $\overset{\sim}{\sim}$  enumerates all the items,  $\overset{\sim}{\sim}$  shows a few representative items. Sometimes  $\overset{\sim}{\sim}$  is put after the last noun to explicitly express that there are also some other things of the kind.

- 18 箱の 中に 手紙や 写真が あります。 There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.
- 倒箱の中に手紙や写真などがあります。 There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.

### 6. Word (s) ですか

The particle  $\phi$  has the function to confirm. The speaker picks up a word or words he/she wants to confirm and confirms it (them) using this pattern.

② すみません。ユニューヤ・ストアは どこですか。 …ユニューヤ・ストアですか。あの ビルの 中です。

Excuse me, but where is Yunyu-ya Store?

···Yunyu-ya Store? It's in that building.

## 7. チリソースは ありませんか

71

います [こどもが〜] います [にほんに〜] かかります やすみます [かいしゃを〜]	[子どもが〜] [日本に〜] 休みます [会社を〜]	have [a child]  stay, be [in Japan]  take (referring to time or money) take a day off [work]
ひとつかってつっているなっていないできないできない。これでいるといくののできない。これにはいくのできない。	1 7 2 7 3 7 4 7 5 7 6 7 7 8 7 9 7	one (used when counting things) two three four five six seven eight nine ten how many
ひとり ふたり ーにん ーだい ーまい	1人 2人 - 人 - 台 - 枚	one person  1wo persons  - people  (counter for machines, cars, etc.) (counter for paper, stamps, etc.)
-かい りんご みかん サンドイッチ カレー[ライス] アイスクリーム	- 包	apple mandarin orange sandwich curry [and rice] ice cream
きって はがき ふうとう そくたつ かきとめ	切手 封筒 速達 書留	postage stamp post card envelope special delivery registered mail

Lesson 11

エアメール	/ <del>1</del> 1 to 1 (75)	airmail	
(こうくうびん) ふなびん	(航空便) 船便	sea mail	
りょうしん	両親	parents	
きょうだい	兄弟	brothers and sisters	
あに	兄	(my) elder brother	
おにいさん	お兄さん	(someone else's) elder brother	
あね	姉	(my) elder sister	
おねえさん	お姉さん	(someone else's) elder sister	
おとうと	弟	(my) younger brother	
おとうとさん	弟さん	(someone else's) younger brother	
いもうと	妹	(my) younger sister	44
いもうとさん	妹さん	(someone else's) younger sister	
がいこく	外国	foreign country	
- じかん	- 時間	- hours	
_ , ,	- 週間	= weeks	
ーかげつ	一か月	= months	
ーねん	一年	- years	
~ぐらい		about ~	73
どのくらい		how long	
ぜんぶで	全部で	in total	
みんな		all, everything	
~だけ		only $\sim$	
いらっしゃいませ。		Welcome./May I help you? (a greeting to a	
		customer or a guest entering a shop, etc.)	
△会話>			
いい [お]天気です。	<b>†</b> 1.	Nice weather, isn't it?	
お山かけですか。		Are you going out?	
ちょっと ~まで。		I'm just going to $\sim$ .	
行って いらっしゃ	۱ ۱ ،	So long, (lit. Go and come back.)	
行って まいります		So long. (lit. I'm going and coming back.)	
それから	٥	and, furthermore	
(100 9		many the stage travers	

Australia

オーストラリア

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. There are seven tables in the meeting room.
- 2. I will stay in Japan for one year.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. How many apples did you buy?
  - ... I bought four.
- 2. Give me five 80-yen stamps and two postcards, please.
  - ... Certainly. That's 500 yen in all.
- 3. Are there foreign teachers at Fuji University?
  - ... Yes, there are three. They are all Americans.
- 4. How many people are there in your family?
  - ... There are five. My parents, my elder sister, my elder brother and me.
- 5. How many times a week do you play tennis?
  - ... I play it about twice a week.
- 6. How long did you study Spanish, Mr. Tanaka?
  - ... I studied it for three months.
  - Only three months? You speak it very well.
- 7. How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo by Shinkansen?
  - "It takes two and a half hours.

#### Conversation

### Please send this by sea mail

Janitor: Nice weather, isn't it? Are you going out?

Wang: Yes, I am going to the post office.

Janitor: Really? See you later.

Wang: See you.

-----

Wang: I would like to send this by special delivery.

Post office clerk: Sure. To Australia? That's 370 yen.

Wang: And also this parcel.

Post office clerk: By sea mail or airmail?

Wang: How much is sea mail?

Post office clerk: 500 yen.

Wang: How long will it take?

Post office clerk: It will take about one month.

Wang: Well, please send it by sea mail.

74

# III. Reference Words & Information

# メニュー MENU

_				
定食		set meal		<u>~~~~</u>
ラン	チ	set meal in the western		<u>-</u>
		style		
			<u> </u>	
天ど	ん	a bowl of rice with fried		
s. c:		fish and vegetables	<sub>{</sub> カレーライス	curry and rice
親子	どん	a bowl of rice with	ハンバーグ	hamburg steak
		chicken and egg	〉コロッケ	croquette
牛ど	L	a bowl of rice with beef	えびフライ	fried shrimp
			₹ フライドチキン	fried chicken
焼肉		grilled meat	\ \	
野菜	いため	sauteed vegetables	サラダ	salad
			スープ	soup
漬物		pickles	スパゲティー	spaghetti
みそ	汁	miso soup	ピザ	pizza
おに	ぎり	riceball	ハンバーガー	hamburger
			サンドウィッチ	sandwich
てん.	.;; b	fried seafood and vegetables	トースト	toast
すし		vinegared rice with raw fish	{	
うどん	L	Japanese noodles made	J	
		from wheat flour		<u>्रिक्तिकाङ्की</u>
そば		Japanese noodles made		<del></del>
		from buckwheat flour	}	)
ラー	メン	Chinese noodles in soup	<b>(</b>	D .
		with meat and vegetables	\	
		Ü	} ====================================	coffee
焼き	そば	Chinese stir-fried noodles	紅茶	black tea
		with pork and vegetables	ココア	cocoa
お好。	み焼き	a type of pancake grilled	ジュース	juice
		with meat, vegetables and egg	{ コーラ	cola

11

1)ひとつ。ふたつ……とお

These words are used to count things up to ten. Eleven and higher are counted by using the numbers themselves.

2) Counter Suffixes

When counting some sorts of things or expressing the quantity of things, counter suffixes are attached after the numbers.

- 一人 number of people except for one and two ひとり (1人) and ふたり (2人) are used for one and two. 4 人 (four people) is read よにん.
- number of machines or vehicles like cars and bicycles
- 枚 回 number of thin or flat things such as paper, dishes, shirts, CDs, etc.
- times
- minutes
- 一時間 hours
- days

The number of days takes the counter suffix 15. However, from two to ten, the same words as used for dates are used. ("One day" is 1にち、"two days" is ふつか、……、"ten days" is とおか.)

- weeks
- か月 months
- 笄 vears

Details and other counter suffixes are listed in the appendices.

3) Usage

Quantifiers (numbers with counter suffixes) are usually put before the verbs they modify. However, this is not always the case with length of time.

- ① りんごを 4つ 買いました。 We bought four apples.
- ② 外国人の 学生が 2人 います。 There are two foreign students.
- ③ 国で 2か月 日本語を 勉強しました。

I studied Japanese for two months in my country.

4) Interrogatives

- (1)  $\vee \langle \neg \rangle$  is used to ask how many about things which are counted as ひとつ、ふたつ、……。
  - ④ みかんを いくつ 買いましたか。 …8つ 買いました。

How many mandarin oranges did you buy?

... I bought eight.

76

(2)  $\mathcal{L}$  is used with a counter suffix to ask how many. ⑤ この会社に外国人が何人いますか。 …5人 います。 How many foreigners are there in this company? ··· There are five. ⑥ 毎晩 何時間 日本語を 勉強しますか。 … 2 時間 勉強します。 How many hours do you study Japanese every night? ···Two hours. (3) どのくらい is used to ask the length of time something takes. You can use various units of time in the answer. 11 ⑦ どのくらい 日本語を 勉強しましたか。 …3年 勉強しました。 How long did you study Japanese? ... I studied it for three years. ⑧ 大阪から 東京まで どのくらい かかりますか。 …新幹線で 2時間半 かかります。 How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo? ... It takes two and a half hours by Shinkansen. 5)ぐらい ぐらい is added after quantifiers to mean "about." ⑨ 学校に 先生が 30人ぐらい います。 There are about thirty teachers in our school. ⑩ 15分ぐらい かかります。 It takes about fifteen minutes. 2. Quantifier (period) に 一回 V With this expression you can say how often you do something. ① 1か月に 2回 映画を 見ます。 I go to see movies twice a month. 3. Quantifier だけ/Nだけ

だけ means "only." It is added after quantifiers or nouns to express that there is

I only have Sundays off.

② パワー電気に 外国人の 社員が 1人だけ います。 There is only one foreign employee in Power Electric.

no more or nothing (no one) else.

① 休みは 日曜日だけです。

#### /6

# I. Vocabulary

かんたん[な]	簡単[な]	easy, simple
ちかい	近い	near
とおい	遠い	far
はやい	速い、早い	fast, early
おそい	遅い	slow, late
おおい	多い	many [people], much
[ひとが~]	[人が ~]	
すくない	少ない	few [people], a little
[ひとが~]	[人が ~]	• • •
あたたかい	暖かい、温かい	`warm
すずしい	涼しい	cool
あまい	甘い	sweet
からい	辛い	hot (taste), spicy
おもい	重い	heavy
かるい	軽い	light
1111		prefer [coffee]
[コーヒーが ~]		
きせつ	李節	season
はる	春	spring
なつ	夏	summer
あき	秋	autumn, fall
ふゆ	冬	winter
てんき	天気	weather
あめ	雨	rain, rainy
ゆき	<b>衛</b>	snow, snowy
くもり	曇り	cloudy
ホテル		hotel
くうこう	空港	airport
うみ	海	sea, ocean
, • r	* TK	gail, would
せかい	世界	world

パーティー		party (~を します: give a party)	
[お]まつり	[お]祭り	festival	
しけん	試験	examination	
すきやき	すき焼き	sukiyaki (beef and vegetable hot pot)	
さしみ	刺身	sashimi (sliced raw fish)	
[お]すし	,,,,,	sushi (vinegared rice topped with raw fish)	
てんぷら		tempura (seafood and vegetables deep	
		fried in batter)	
いけばな	生け花	flower arrangement (~をします:	
7 11 1 dr .gr	王1/16	practice flower arrangement)	.;;;;;
もみじ	紅葉	maple, red leaves of autumn	12
0 0 7 0	,,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
どちら		which one (between two things)	
どちらも		both	
ずっと		by far	
はじめて	初めて	for the first time	
			79
○会話♪			
ただいま。		I'm home.	
お帰りなさい。		Welcome home.	
すごいですね。		That's amazing.	
でも		but	
疲れました。		(I'm) tired.	
	******	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	
祇園祭		the Gion Festival, the most famous festival	
		in Kyoto	
ホンコン		Hong Kong (香港)	
シンガポール		Singapore	
毎日屋		fictitious supermarket	
ABCストア		fictitious supermarket	
ジャパン		fictitious supermarket	

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. It was rainy yesterday.
- 2. It was cold yesterday.
- 3. Hokkaido is bigger than Kyushu.
- 4. I like summer best of the year.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Was Kyoto quiet?
  - ···No, it wasn't.
- 2. Was the trip enjoyable?
  - ··· Yes, it was very enjoyable.
- 3. Was the weather good?
  - ... No, it wasn't so good.
- 4. How was the party yesterday?
  - ... It was very lively. I met various people.
- 5. Are there more people in Tokyo than in New York?
  - ···Yes, a lot more.
- 6. Which is the faster way to get to the airport, by bus or by train?
  - ···The train is faster.
- 7. Which do you prefer, the sea or the mountains?
  - ...I like both.
- 8. What do you like best of all Japanese dishes?
  - ··· I like tempura best.

#### Conversation

#### How was the Festival?

Miller: Hello. (I'm home.)

Janitor: Hello. (Welcome home.)

Miller: This is a souvenir from Kyoto.

Janitor: Thank you.

How was the Gion Festival?

Miller: It was very interesting.

There were a lot of foreign visitors.

Janitor: The Gion Festival is the most famous of all the festivals

in Kyoto.

Miller: Is that so?

Janitor: Did you take photos?

Miller: Yes, I took about a hundred photos.

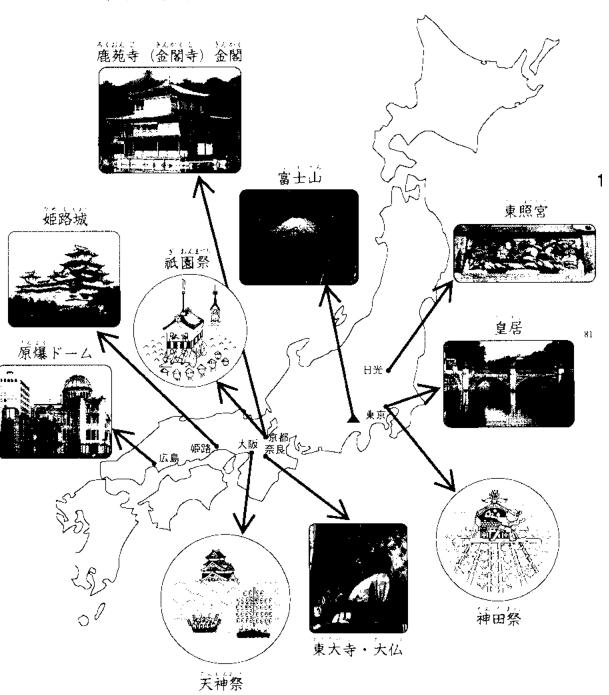
Janitor: Amazing!

Miller: Yes. But it made me a bit tired.

80

## III. Reference Words & Information

察りと名所 FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Past tense of noun sentences and &-adjective sentences

		non-past (present/future)		past
65	N	あめして	N	あめ しずか
affirmative	な-adj	あめ しずか	な-adj	しずか
	N	あめ しじゃありません しずかし(では)	N	あめ じゃ ありませんでした しずか (では)
negative	な-adj	しずかり(では)	な-adj	しずか <sup>(では)</sup>

① きのうは 箭でした。

It was rainy yesterday.

② きのうの 試験は 簡単じゃ ありませんでした。 Yesterday's exam was not easy.

### 2. Past tense of W-adjective sentences

	non-past (present/future)	past
affirmative	あついです	あつかったです
negative	あつくないです	あつくなかったです

③ きのうは 暑かったです。 It was hot yesterday.

④ きのうの パーティーは あまり 楽しくなかったです。

I didn't enjoy yesterday's party very much.

## 3. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>より adjective です

This sentence pattern describes the quality and/or state of N<sub>1</sub> in comparison with N2.

⑤ この 単は あの 単より 大きいです。

This car is bigger than that car.

## 4. N,と N2と どちらが adjective ですか …N₁/N₂の ほうが adjective です

The question asks the listener to choose between two items ( $N_1$  and  $N_2$ ). The interrogative used is always £56 if the comparison is made between two

⑥ サッカーと 野球と どちらが おもしろいですか。

Which is more interesting, baseball or football?

···Football is.

82

⑦ ミラーさんと サントスさんと どちらが テニスが 上手ですか。

Who is a better tennis player, Mr. Miller or Mr. Santos?

⑧ 北海道と 大阪と どちらが 涼しいですか。

Which is cooler, Hokkaido or Osaka?

⑨春と秋とどちらが好きですか。

Which do you like better, spring or autumn?

$$N_1$$
 [の 中]で  $\begin{cases} \overleftarrow{n} \\ \overleftarrow{n} \\ \overleftarrow{n} \end{cases}$  かいちばん adjective ですか  $\underbrace{n}$  いちばん adjective です

This question pattern is used to ask the listener to choose something that is the most "adjective." The choice is made from the group or category denoted by  $N_{\rm ch}$ . The interrogative used is decided by the kind of category from which the choice is made.

⑩ 日本料理[の 中]で 何が いちばん おいしいですか。 …てんぷらが いちばん おいしいです。

Among Japanese dishes, what is the most delicious?

- ···Tempura is.
- ① ヨーロッパで どこが いちばん よかったですか。…スイスが いちばん よかったです。

In Europe, where did you like best?

- ... I liked Switzerland best.
- 四家族で だれが いちばん 背が 高いですか。
  - …弟が いちばん 背が 高いです。

Who is the tallest of your family?

- ... My younger brother is.
- ③ 1年でいつがいちばん寒いですか。
  - … 2月が いちばん 寒いです。

When is the coldest time of a year?

"It's coldest in February.

[Note] When the subject is an interrogative, the particle n is used. (See Lesson 10, n to n t

When the subject of an adjective sentence is questioned,  $\mathcal{N}$  is attached to the interrogative in the same way.

12

# Lesson 13

# I. Vocabulary

あそびます	遊びます	enjoy oneself, play
およぎます		swim
		go to meet, welcome
つかれます	疲れます	get tired
だします	出します	send [a letter]
[てがみを~]	[手紙を ~]	
はいります	入ります	enter [a coffee shop]
[きっさてんに〜		
		go out [of a coffee shop]
[きっさてんを〜	-] [喫茶店を ~]	
けっこんします		
かいものします	買い物します	do shopping
しょくじします	食事します	have a meal, dine
さんぽします	散歩します	take a walk [in a park]
[こうえんを ~]	[公園を ~]	
たいへん[な]	+ 亦「か]	hard, tough, severe, awful
たいへんしな」	八及[4]	nard, rough, severe, unrui
ほしい	欲しい	want (something)
さびしい	寂しい	lonely
ひろい	広い	wide, spacious
せまい	狭い	narrow, small (room, etc.)
C a ·	370	114.1777, 51.1211 (10011)
しやくしょ	市役所	municipal office, city hall
プール	1 124	swimming pool
かわ	ות	river
V 42	,	
けいざい	経済	economy
びじゅつ	美術	fine arts
つり	釣り	fishing (~をします: fish, angle)
スキー		skiing (~をします: ski)
かいぎ	会議	meeting, conference
		(~をします: hold a conference)
とうろく	登録	registration (~をします: register)
- , , ,	-	_

しゅうまつ	週末	weekend	
~ごろ		about (time)	
なにか どこか	何か	something somewhere, some place	
おなかが すきまし おなかが いっぱい のどが かわきまし そうですね。 そう しましょう。	です。	<ul><li>(I'm) hungry.</li><li>(I'm) full.</li><li>(I'm) thirsty.</li><li>I agree with you.</li><li>Let's do that. (used when agreeing with someone's suggestion)</li></ul>	16
△会話♪			
ご注文は? 定食 年どん [少夕] お待ちくた 別々に	<b>ごさい。</b>	May I take your order? set meal bowl of rice topped with beef Please wait [a moment]. separately	8.5
	*****	*\*\*\*\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	
ロシア つるや おはようテレビ		Russia fictitious Japanese restaurant fictitious TV program	

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I want a personal computer.
- 2. I want to eat tempura.
- 3. I will go to France to study cooking.

#### Example Sentences

- 1. What do you want most now?
  - ... I want a house.
- 2. Where do you want to go on summer vacation?
  - ···I want to go to Okinawa.
- 3. Because I am tired today, I don't want to do anything.
  - "Me, too. Today's meeting was tough, wasn't it?
- 4. What will you do this weekend?
  - ... I will go to Kobe with my children to see the ships.
- 5. What did you come to Japan to study?
  - ··· I came here to study economics.
- 6. Did you go anywhere on winter vacation?
  - ···Yes, I did.

Where did you go?

... I went to Hokkaido to ski.

#### Conversation

#### Charge us separately

Yamada: Why, it's already twelve. Shall we go for lunch?

Miller: Sure.

Yamada: Where shall we go?

Miller: Let me see. Today I want to eat Japanese food.

Yamada: Then, let's go to "Tsuru-ya."

\_\_\_\_\_

Waiter: May I take your order?

Miller: I'll have the tempura set lunch.

Yamada: I'll have the gyudon.

Waiter: One tempura set lunch and one gyudon. I'll be right back.

Cashier: 1,680 yen altogether, sir.

Miller: Excuse me. Please charge us separately.

Cashier: Right. 980 yen for the tempura set lunch, 700 yen for the

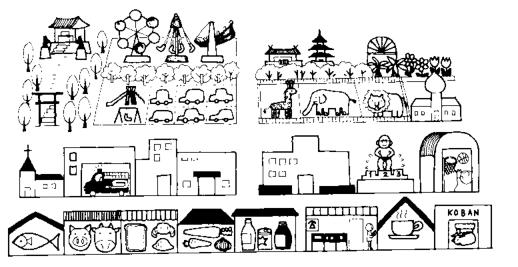
gyudon.

13

## III. Reference Words & Information

# <sup>4</sup>	W 35	
町の	)中	TOWN

博物館	museum	市役所	city hall
美術館	art museum	警察署	police
図書館	library	交番	police box
映画館	movie theater	消防署	fire station
動物園	200	駐車場	parking lot
植物園	botanical garden		r
遊園地	amusement park	大学	university
AL MILE	antasement park	高校 高校	senior high school
い。 お幸	Buddhist temple	中学校	junior high school
油社	Shinto shrine	小学校	elementary school
17.15 <b>粉 4</b>	Christian church	幼稚園	kindergarten
セスク		初生配	Kilidetgaften
モスク	Mosque	。· 肉屋	hantahania ahan
体育館		. 1,	butcher's shop
	gymnasium	パン屋	bakery
プール	swimming pool	思摩	fishmonger's
公園	park	<i>"</i> 卢	liquor shop
12 15 15 16		八古屋	vegetable shop
大使館	embassy	1 - T 4.	
入国管理局	immigration bureau	喫茶店	coffee shop
		コンビニ	convenience store
		スーパー	supermarket
		デパート	department store



## IV. Grammar Explanation

## 1. Nが 欲しいです

This sentence pattern is used to express the speaker's desire to possess or have an object. It can also be used to ask what the listener wants. The object is marked with the particle が. ほしい is an い-adjective.

- ① わたしは 友達が 欲しいです。
- ② 今 何が いちばん 欲しいですか。 What do you want most now? …車が 欲しいです。
- …車が 欲しいです。 ③ 子どもが 欲しいですか。 …いいえ、数しくないです。

I want a friend.

··· I want a car most.

Do you want a child? ....No, I don't.

## 2. Vます-form たいです

1) Verb ます-form

The form of a verb when it is used with £ f is called the £ f-form. In the word かいます. かい is the ます-form.

2) Vます-form たいです

This expresses the speaker's desire to do something. It is also used to ask what the listener wants to do. In this expression, as is seen in (5) below, the particle  $t^{\prime}$  can replace the particle  $\xi$ . The other particles cannot be replaced by  $t^{\prime}$ . Vます-form たい inflects as an い-adjective.

- ④ わたしは 沖縄へ 行きたいです。 I want to go to Okinawa.
- ⑤ わたしは てんぷらを 食べたいです。 I want to eat tempura.
- ⑥ 神戸で 何を 買いたいですか。 What do you want to buy in Kobe? (が)…靴を 買いたいです。 …I want to buy a pair of shoes.  $(h^{\epsilon})$
- ⑦ おなかが 痛いですから、何も 食べたくないです。

Because I have a stomachache, I don't want to eat anything.

[Note 1] ほしいです or ~たいです cannot be used to describe the third person's desire.

[Note 2] You can neither use ほしいですか nor Vます-form たいですか when you offer something or invite someone to do something. For example, when you offer a cup of coffee (or invite the listener to have a cup of coffee), you should not say, コーヒーが ほしいですか, nor should you say コーヒーを のみたいですか. Expressions such as コーヒーは いかがですか or コーヒーを のみませんか should be used.

13

# 3. $N(\text{place}) \land \begin{cases} V \text{ます-form} \\ N \end{cases}$ に 行きます/来ます/帰ります

The purpose for  $v \ni \sharp f$ ,  $\vartheta \sharp f$  or  $m \wr J \sharp f$  is expressed using this pattern. The purpose is marked with the particle G. A noun used before G is of the kind denoting an action.

⑧ 神戸へ インド料理を 食べに 行きます。

I'm going to Kobe to eat Indian food.

⑨ 神戸へ 買い物に 行きます。

I'm going to Kobe for shopping.

⑩ 日本へ 美術の 勉強に 来ました。

I came to Japan in order to study art.

[Note] You can also use nouns denoting events such as festivals and concerts before 15. In this case, the speaker's purpose is to see or enjoy the event.

① あした 京都の お祭りに 行きます。 I'll go to the festival in Kyoto tomorrow.

## 4. NE V/NE V

The particle (z) marks the goal when used with verbs like (z) (z)

(12) あの 喫茶店に 入りましょう。

Let's go in that coffee shop,

③ 7時にうちを出ます。

I leave my house at 7 o'clock.

## 5. どこか/何か

 $E \subset h$  means anywhere or somewhere.  $E \subset h$  means anything or something. The particles  $A \subset h$  and  $E \subset h$  and  $E \subset h$  means anything or something.

② 冬休みは どこか」へ」 行きましたか。…はい、行きました。

Did you go anywhere in the winter vacation?

···Yes, I did.

⑤ のどが かわきましたから、何か[を] 飲みたいです。 I'm thirsty. I want to drink something.

## 6. ご注文

 $\vec{z}$  is a prefix added to some words to express respect.

(16) ご注文は?

May I have your order?

13

## I. Vocabulary

つけます Ⅱ		turn on
けします I	消します	turn off
あけます <b>I</b>		open
	閉めます	close, shut
いそぎます I	· -	hurry
- '	待ちます	wait
とめます II		stop, park
まがります I		turn [to the right]
[みぎへ~]		tern (te me tight)
もちます I		hold
とります I		
てつだいます I		help (with a task)
よびます I	呼びます	call
はなします I		speak, talk
みせます Ⅱ	見せます	show
おしえます Ⅱ	教えます	tell [an address]
[じゅうしょを〜	-] [住所を ~]	
はじめます Ⅱ	始めます	start, begin
ふります I	降ります	rain
[あめが ~]	[雨が ~]	
コピーします 🎞		copy
エアコン		air conditioner
バスホート		passport
なまえ	名前	name
じゅうしょ	住所	address
ちず	地図	map
しお	塩	salt
さとう	砂糖	sugar
1 7 1 5	2± 2 +±	L
よみかた	読み方	how to read, way of reading
<i>〜</i> かた	~方	how to $\sim$ , way of $\sim$ ing

ゆっくり slowly, leisurely すぐ immediately また again あとで later もう すこし もう 少し a little more もう ~  $\simeq$  more, another  $\simeq$ いいですよ。 Sure./Certainly. right (used when encouraging some course さあ of action) あれ? Oh! (in surprise or in wonder) △会話♪ 信号を 右へ 曲がって ください。 Turn to the right at the signal. まっすぐ straight これで お願いします。 I'd like to pay with this. お釣り change \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* 梅田

name of a town in Osaka

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Wait a moment, please.
- 2. Mr. Miller is making a telephone call now.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Please write your name and address here.
  - ···Yes.
- 2. Please show me that shirt.
  - ···Here you are.

Do you have one a little bigger?

- ... Yes, How about this shirt?
- 3. Excuse me. Please tell me how to read this kanji?
  - ···It's "kakitome."
- 4. It's hot, isn't it? Shall I open the window?
  - ···Yes, please.
- 5. Shall I come to the station to pick you up?
  - ... No, thank you. I will come by taxi.
- 6. Where is Ms. Sato?
  - ... She is talking with Mr. Matsumoto in the meeting room.

Then, I will come again later.

### Conversation

### To Umeda, please

Karina: To Umeda, please.

Driver: Yes.

Karina: Excuse me. Turn to the right at that traffic light.

Driver: To the right?

Karina: Yes.

\_\_\_\_\_\_

Driver: Go straight?

Karina: Yes, go straight.

Karina: Stop in front of that flower shop.

Driver: Yes.

1,800 yen, please.

Karina: Here you are.

Driver: That's 3,200 yen change. Thank you.

14

## III. Reference Words & Information

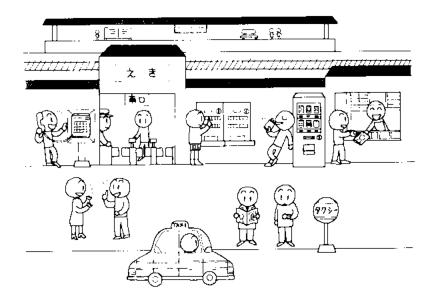
バスターミナル bus terminal

bus stop

バス停

## 歉 STATION

切符売り場 自動券売機 精算機	ticket office, ticket area ticket machine fare adjustment machine	特急快速	super-express train express train rapid service train	
改札口	wicket, ticket barrier	準急	semi-express train	
出口	exit	普通	local train	
<b>入口</b> 281. c. 4	entrance	Q 1, 6074		
東口	east exit	時刻表	timetable	14
西口	west exit	~発	departing ~	
南口	south exit	~着	arriving at $\sim$	
北口	north exit	[東京]行き	for [TOKYO]	
中央口	central exit	( • il ),		
		定期券	commutation ticket, commuter pass	
[プラット] ホーム	platform	回数券	coupon ticket	
売店	kiosk	片道	one way	93
コインロッカー	coin locker	往復	round trip	
タクシー乗り場	taxi stand			



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb conjugation

Verbs in Japanese change their forms, i.e., they conjugate, and they are divided into three groups according to the type of conjugation. Depending on the following phrases, you can make sentences with various meanings.

### 2. Verb groups

1) Group I verbs

In the verbs of this group, the last sound of the ます-form is that of the い-line. (See Main Textbook, p. 2, "かなど拍.")

2) Group II verbs

In most of the verbs of this group, the last sound of the  $\pm \tau$ -form is that of the  $\lambda$ -line, but in some verbs the last sound of the  $\pm \tau$ -form is that of the  $\lambda$ -line.

3) Group III verbs

Verbs of this group include  $l \sharp t$  and "noun denoting an action +  $l \sharp t$ " as well as  $\sharp \sharp t$ .

### 3. Verb T-form

The verb form which ends with  $\tau$  or  $\tau$  is called the  $\tau$ -form. How to make the  $\tau$ -form of a verb depends on which group the verb belongs to as explained below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, p. 116, 練習 A 1.)

- 1) Group I Depending on the last sound of the ます-form, the T-form of the verbs of this group is made as shown in the form table. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, 練習A 1.) Note that the T-form of the verb いきます, いって, is an exception.
- 2) Group II Attach 7 to the \$\frac{1}{2} \tag{form.}
- 3) Group III Attach 7 to the £ f-form.

## 4. V T-form ください Please do...

This sentence pattern is used to ask, instruct or encourage the listener to do something. Naturally, if the listener is one's superior, this expression cannot be used for giving instructions to him/her. The sentences shown below are examples of asking, instructing and encouraging, respectively.

- ① すみませんが、この 漢字の 読み方を 教えて ください。 Excuse me, could you tell me how to read this kanji, please?
- ② ここに 住所と 名前を 書いて ください。

Please write your name and address here.

③ ぜひ 遊びに 来て ください。 Please come to my place. (L. 25)

0.4

When it is used to ask the listener to do something,  $\mathcal{T}A\mathcal{Z}U\mathcal{M}$  is often added before  $V\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{M}$  as in ①. This expression is politer than only saying  $V\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{M}$ .

### 5. Vて-form います be V-ing

This sentence pattern indicates that a certain action or motion is in progress.

④ ミラーさんは 今 電話を かけて います。

Mr. Miller is making a phone call now.

⑤ 今 雨が 降って いますか。 …はい、降って います。 …いいえ、降って いません。 Is it raining now?

···Yes, it is. ···No, it is not.

### 6. Vます-form ましょうか | Shall I...?

This expression is used when the speaker is offering to do something for the listener.

⑥ A:あしたも 来ましょうか。B:ええ、10時に来てください。

Shall I come tomorrow, too? ... Yes, please come at ten.

⑦ A:傘を 貸しましょうか。 B:すみません。お願いします。 Shall I lend you an umbrella?

···Yes, please.

⑧ A:荷物を 持ちましょうか。B:いいえ、けっこうです。

Shall I carry your parcel? ... No, thank you.

In the above example conversations, B demonstrates how to politely ask or instruct someone to do something (6), to accept an offer with gratitude (7) and to decline an offer politely (8).

### 7. S: が、S: ..., but...

⑨ 失礼ですが、お名前は?

Excuse me, but may I have your name? (L.1)

⑩ すみませんが、塩を 取って ください。Please pass me the salt.

You learned the conjunctive particle  $\mathfrak{h}'$  in Lesson 8. In expressions such as  $\mathsf{L} \supset \mathsf{h} \cup \mathsf{r}' \mathsf{t} \mathsf{h}'$  or  $\mathsf{t} \not \to \mathsf{t} \not \to \mathsf{t} \mathsf{h}'$ , which are used as introductory remarks when speaking to someone,  $\mathfrak{h}'$ , losing its original meaning, is used to connect two sentences lightly.

## 8. N# V

When describing a natural phenomenon, the subject is indicated by  $\pi^{\epsilon}$ .

① 雨が降っています。

It is raining.

14

## Lesson 15

## I. Vocabulary

たちます I	立ちます	stand up
すわります I	座ります	sit down
つかいます I	使います	use
おきます 1	置きます	put
つくります I	作ります、造ります	make, produce
うります I	売ります	sell
しります I	知ります	get to know
すみます I	住みます	be going to live
けんきゅうしますⅢ	研究します	do research
しって います	知って います	know
すんで います	住んで います	live [in Osaka]
[おおさかに ~]	[大阪に~]	
しりょう	資料	materials, data
カタログ		catalog

じこくひょう	時刻表	timetable
3. ⟨	服	clothes
せいひん	製品	products
ソフト		software
せんもん	専門	speciality, field of study
はいしゃ	歯医者	dentist, dentist's

とこや 床屋 barber, barber's	はいしゃ	幽医有	dentist, dentist s
	とこや	床屋	barber, barber's

プレイガイド (theater) ticket agency

どくしん 独身 single, unmarried

△会話▷

特に 思い出します I ご家族

いらっしゃいます I

高校

especially

remember, recollect

your family

be (honorific equivalent of  $(1 \pm i)$ )

senior high school

**\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*** 

日本橋

name of a shopping district in Osaka

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. You may take photographs.
- 2. Mr. Santos has a personal computer.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. May I keep this catalog?
  - ···Sure, please do.
- 2. May I borrow this dictionary?
  - ···I'm sorry, but... I'm using it now.
- 3. You must not play here.
  - ···All right.
- 4. Do you know the phone number of the City Hall?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 5. Where do you live, Ms. Maria?
  - ... I live in Osaka.
- 6. Is Mr. Wang single?
  - ... No, he is married.
- 7. What is your job?
  - ... I am a teacher. I teach at Fuji University.

Your speciality?

"It's Japanese fine art.

#### Conversation

### Tell me about your family

Miller: Today's movie was good, wasn't it?

Kimura: Yes, it was. The father was particularly good, wasn't he?

Miller: Yes. I was reminded of my family.

Kimura: Were you? Tell me about your family, Mr. Miller.

Miller: I have my parents and an elder sister.

Kimura: Where do they live?

Miller: My parents live near New York City.

My sister is in London.

How about your family, Ms. Kimura?

Kimura: There are three of us. My father works for a bank.

My mother teaches English at a high school.

15

### III. Reference Words & Information

## 職業 OCCUPATIONS



15

### IV. Grammar Explanation

## 1. V T-form もいいです You may do...

This expression is used to grant permission.

① 写真を 撮っても いいです。

You may take pictures.

May I smoke?

To ask for permission, the question form of this sentence is used.

How to answer such a question using the same sentence pattern is as follows. Note that an euphemistic answer is given when permission is not granted.

③ この カタログを もらっても いいですか。

…ええ、いいですよ。どうぞ。

…すみません。ちょっと。

May I have this catalogue?

···Yes. Here you are.

···Sorry. I'm afraid not.

### 2. Vて-form はいけません You must not do...

This sentence pattern is used to express prohibition.

You must not smoke here. Because this is no-smoking area.

When you strongly wish to refuse permission to questions using the expression Vて-form も いいですか, you answer いいえ、いけません, omitting V 7-form 11. This expression cannot be used by an inferior to a superior.

(5) 先生、ここで 遊んでも いいですか。 May we play here, Ma'am? …いいえ、いけません。

···No, you must not.

## 3. **V**て-form います。

In addition to the usage of V 7-form wat you learned in Lesson 14, it is also used in describing a certain continuing state which resulted from a certain action in the past.

⑥ わたしは 結婚して います。 I'm married.

⑦ わたしは 田中さんを 知って います。 I know Mr. Tanaka.

(8) わたしは 大阪に 住んで います。 I live in Osaka.

⑨ わたしは カメラを 持って います。 I have a camera.

もって います means "be holding" and "possess" as well.

15

## 4. Vて-form います

V  $\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathcal{V} \notin \mathcal{T}$  is also used in describing a habitual action; that is, when the same action is repeatedly performed over a period of time.

Therefore, one's occupation can be expressed by this sentence pattern, like in 2 and 3. So if the question  $B \cup \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{I}$   $\mathcal{L} \times \mathcal{L} + \mathcal{L} \times \mathcal{L}$  is asked, this sentence pattern can be used to answer it.

- ⑩ IMCは コンピューターソフトを 作って います。 IMC makes computer software.
- ① スーパーで フィルムを 売って います。 Supermarkets sell films.
- ② ミラーさんは IMCで 働いて います。 Mr. Miller works for IMC.
- ③ 妹は 大学で 勉強して います。 My younger sister is studying at university.

### 5. 知りません

The negative form of しって います is しりません.

- (4) 市役所の 電話番号を 知って いますか。
  - …はい、知って います。
  - …いいえ、知りません。

Do you know the telephone number of the city hall?

- ···Yes, I do.
- ···No, I don't.

15

## Lesson 16

## l. Vocabulary

		ride, get on [a train]
[でんしゃに ~] おります Ⅱ		get off [a train]
[でんしゃを~]		get on factani
		change (trains, etc.)
あびます Ⅱ		
[シャワーを~]		
いれます Ⅱ	入れます	put in, insert
だします Ι		
はいります I	入ります	
[だいがくに~]	[大学に ~]	•
でます Ⅱ	出ます	graduate from [university]
[だいがくを~]	[大学を ~]	
やめます Ⅱ		quit or retire from [a company], stop, give up
[かいしゃを~]		
おします Ι	押します	push, press
	若い	young
	長い	long
みじかい		short
あかるい		bright, light
くらい	_	dark
せが たかい		tall (referring to person)
あたまが いい	頭がいい	clever, smart
からだ	<i>1</i> <b>±</b>	handa.
からた あたま	体 頭	body
かみ	髮	head
かお	類	hair
1/180 80	目	face
4. J.	耳	eye ear
<i>くち</i>		mouth
は	歯	tooth
おなか	RET.	stomach
あし	足	leg, foot
α) L	~	icg, toot

サービス ジョギング		service	
ショインテーシャワー		jogging (〜をします: jog) shower	
		agowei	
みどり	緑	green, greenery	
[お]てら	[お]寺	Buddhist temple	
じんじゃ	神社	Shinto shrine	
07001	11 /	Signite significant	
りゅうがくせい	留学生	foreign student	
	m.		
ーばん	<b>一番</b>	number —	
どうやって		in what way, how	
どの~		which $\sim$ (used for three or more)	16
			14
[いいえ、] まだま	だです。	[No,] I still have a long way to go.	
△会話▷			
- 七引き中しですか		Are you making a withdrawal?	
- お引き出しですか - まず	Ď	Are you making a withdrawal?	103
まず		first of all	103
		first of all cash dispensing card	103
まず キャッシュカード 暗証番号		first of all	103
ます。シュカード・電子による額		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN	103
まず キャッシュカード 暗証番号		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step	103
ます。シュカード・電子による額		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money	103
まず キャッシュカード 暗証 に、額 ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~します: confirm)	103
まれ、 ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・ ・		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~します: confirm) button	103
まれ、暗、次、金、確ボ リアンユカード で、額・認 タン R アア		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~ L # f: confirm) button  Japan Railway Asia	103
まれ暗次、金確ボ Jアバッ・一番 に、額認タ Rジンコカード		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~ L # 7: confirm) button  VANCENCE  Japan Railway Asia Bandung (in Indonesia)	103
まれたで次で金、確ボ Jアバベッチ番に、額認タ Rジンランド号 アドクルス		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~します: confirm) button  VVVVVVVVVVVVV  Japan Railway Asia Bandung (in Indonesia) Veracruz (in Mexico)	103
まキ、暗、次、金、確ボ Jアバベフッ、番に、額、認 タ Rジンララン・号 アドクンカードクシュカード		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~します: confirm) button  VYYYYYYYYYYY  Japan Railway Asia Bandung (in Indonesia) Veracruz (in Mexico) Franken (in Germany)	103
まれに次で金、確ボートアバベフベザヤ・証に、額認ターRジンララトン。号 アドクンナン・サーバー		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~ L # : confirm) button  VYYYYYYYYYYYYYYYY  Japan Railway Asia Bandung (in Indonesia) Veracruz (in Mexico) Franken (in Germany) Vietnam	103
まキ、暗、次、金、確ボ Jアバベフッ、番に、額、認 タ Rジンララン・号 アドクンカードクシュカード		first of all cash dispensing card personal identification number, PIN next, as a next step amount of money confirmation (~します: confirm) button  VYYYYYYYYYYY  Japan Railway Asia Bandung (in Indonesia) Veracruz (in Mexico) Franken (in Germany)	103

### II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

- 1. In the morning I go jogging, take a shower and go to the office.
- 2. We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over.
- 3. The food is delicious in Osaka.
- 4. This personal computer is light and handy.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. What did you do yesterday?
  - ... I went to the library and borrowed some books, and then met a friend.
- 2. How do you go to your university?
  - "I take a No. 16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.
- 3. What are you going to do after getting back to your country?
  - ··· I will work for my father's company.
- 4. Which person is Mr. Santos?
  - ···He is that tall man with dark hair.
- 5. What kind of city is Nara?
  - ...It is a quiet and beautiful city.
- 6. Who is that person?
  - ··· That is Ms. Karina. She is Indonesian, and an overseas student at Fuji University.

### Conversation

#### Tell me how to use this machine

Maria: Excuse me. Could you tell me how to use this machine?

Bank clerk: You want to make a withdrawal?

Maria: Yes.

Bank clerk: Then, please push this button, first.

Maria: Yes.

Bank clerk: Do you have a cash card?

Maria: Yes, here it is.

Bank clerk: Put it in here, and enter the code number.

Maria: Yes.

Bank clerk: Next, enter the sum.

Maria: Fifty thousand yen. Five...

Bank clerk: Push this "Man" and "En."

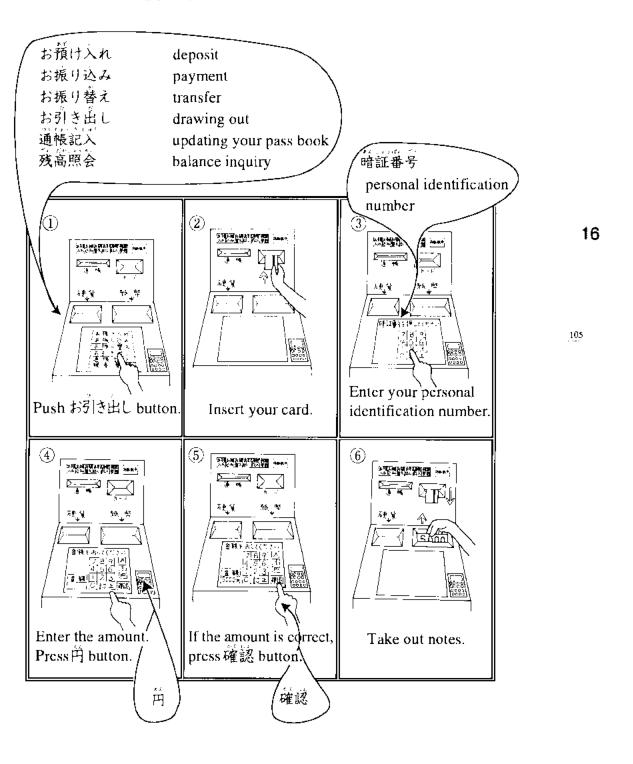
And then push this "Kakunin" button.

Maria: Got it. Thank you very much.

16

### III. Reference Words & Information

## ATMの使い方 HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY



### IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. ∨ **7**-form, [∨ **7**-form], ~

To connect verb sentences, the T-form is used. When two or more actions take place in succession, the actions are mentioned in the order of occurrence by using the 7-form. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

- ① 朝 ジョギングを して、シャワーを 浴びて、会社へ 行きます。 In the morning, I jog, take a shower and go to the office.
- ② 神戸へ 行って、映画を 見て、お茶を 飲みました。 I went to Kobe, saw a movie and drank tea.

## 2. [1]-adj (~火)→~ ⟨ 7, ~

When joining an W-adjective sentence to another sentence, take away the い from the い-adjective and attach くて.

Mr. Miller is young and lively.

④ きのうは 天気が よくて、暑かったです。 Yesterday it was fine and hot.

## 3. N な-adj [な] <sup>|</sup>で、~

When joining noun sentences or tr-adjective sentences, Tt is changed to

- ⑤ カリナさんは インドネシア人で、京都大学の 留学生です。 Ms. Karina is an Indonesian and a student of Kyoto University.
- ⑥ ミラーさんは ハンサムで、親切です。

Mr. Miller is handsome and kind.

⑦ 奈良は 静かで、きれいな 前です。

Nara is a quiet and beautiful city.

[Note 1] The above structures can be used not only for connecting sentences relating to the same topic but also sentences with different topics.

⑧ カリナさんは 学生で、マリアさんは 主婦です。

Ms. Karina is a student and Maria is a housewife.

[Note 2] This method cannot connect sentences of contradictory notion. In that case,  $\mathcal{N}$  is used (see Lesson 8, 7).

×この部屋は狭くて、きれいです。

○ この 部屋は 狭いですが、きれいです。This room is small but clean.

16

### 4. V·て-formから、V2

This sentence pattern indicates that upon completion of the action denoted by  $V_1$ , the action of  $V_2$  is to be conducted. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

- ⑤ 国へ 帰ってから、父の 会社で 働きます。I will work for my father's company after going back to my country.
- ⑩ コンサートが 終わってから、レストランで 食事しました。

We ate at a restaurant after the concert was over.

[Note] The subject of a subordinate clause is indicated by  $\mathfrak{H}^s$ , as shown in the example sentence 0.

### 5. N. は N2が adjective

This sentence pattern is used to describe an attribute of a thing or a person. The topic of the sentence is denoted by  $\{\xi, N_1\}$  is the topic of the sentence.  $N_2$  is the subject of the adjective's description.

- ① 大阪は 食べ物が おいしいです。 Food is tasty in Osaka. ② ドイツの フランケンは ワインが 有名です。
- ② ドイツの フランケンは ワインが 有名です。 Franken in Germany produces famous wine.
- (13) マリアさんは 髪が 長いです。

Maria has long hair.

#### 6. どうやって

どうやって is used to ask the way or the method of doing something. To answer such a question, the pattern learned in 1. is used.

- (4) 大学まで どうやって 行きますか。
  - …京都駅から 16番の バスに 乗って、大学前で 降ります。

How do you go to your university?

··· I take a No.16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.

### 7. どの N

You learned in Lesson 2 that  $\subset \mathcal{O}$ ,  $\subset \mathcal{O}$  and  $\subset \mathcal{O}$  modify nouns. The interrogative word used in this system is  $\subset \mathcal{O}$ .  $\subset \mathcal{O}$  is used to ask the listener to define one among more than two which are concretely presented.

動サントスさんはどの人ですか。…あの背が高くて、髪が黒い人です。

Which one is Mr. Santos?

... That tall man with black hair is.

16

## Lesson 17

## I. Vocabulary

おぼえます [[	覚えます	memorize
わすれます Ⅱ	忘れます	forget
なくします I		lose
だします 1	出します	hand in [a report]
[レポートを ~]		_
はらいます 1	払います	pay
かえします I	返します	give back, return
でかけます Ⅱ	出かけます	go out
ぬぎます I	脱ぎます	take off (clothes, shoes, etc.)
もって いきます I	持って行きます	take (something)
もってきます Ⅲ	持って 来ます	bring (something)
しんぱいします Ⅲ	心配します	worry
ざんぎょうします Ⅲ	残業します	work overtime
しゅっちょうしまっ	ŧ III	go on a business trip
	出張します	
のみます「	飲みます	take [medicine]
[くすりを ~]	薬を ~]	
はいります I	入ります	take [a bath]
[おふろに ~]		
たいせつ[な]		important, precious
だいじょうぶ[な]	大丈夫[な]	all right
	~ ·	
あぶない	危ない	dangerous
1 / 4%	ម្ភាព ៥ភ	
もんだい	問題	question, problem, trouble
こたえ	答え	answer
きんえん	禁煙	no smoking
	·	[health] insurance card
[けんこう]ほけん	しょり [健康]保険証	moaning moderation card
かぜ	LACALIANIA	cold, flu
ねつ	熱	fever
びょうき	病気	illness, disease
くすり	薬	medicine
N 9 7	木	modelino

17

[お]ふろ		bath	
うわぎ したぎ	上着 下着	jacket, outerwear underwear	
せんせい	先生	doctor (used when addressing a medical doctor)	
2、3にち 2、3~ ~までに	2、3日	a few days a few $\sim$ ( $\sim$ is a counter suffix) before $\sim$ , by $\sim$ (indicating time limit)	
ですから		therefore, so	
<ul><li>◆会話♪</li><li>どうしましたか。</li><li>[~が]痛いです。</li><li>のど</li></ul>		What's the matter?  (I) have a pain [in my ~]. throat	17
お大事に。		Take care of yourself. (said to people who are ill)	109

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Please don't take photographs here.
- 2. You must show your passport.
- 3. You do not have to submit the report.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Do not park your car there, please.
  - ···I am sorry.
- 2. Doctor, may I drink alcohol?
  - ...No, refrain from it for two or three days.

Yes, doctor.

- 3. Shall we go for a drink tonight?
  - ···Sorry, Today I'm going out with my wife. So I must go home early.
- 4. By when do I have to submit the report?
  - ... Submit it by Friday, please.
- 5. Do the children have to pay, too?
  - ... No, they don't have to pay.

#### Conversation

### What seems to be the problem?

Doctor: What seems to be the problem?

Matsumoto: I have had a sore throat and a slight temperature since

yesterday.

Doctor: Well, please open your mouth.

......

Doctor: You have a cold. You need a good rest.

Matsumoto: Doctor, I have to go to Tokyo on business from tomorrow. Doctor: Well then, take this medicine and go to bed early today.

Matsumoto: Yes, doctor.

Doctor: And do not take a bath tonight.

Matsumoto: I see.

Doctor: Please take care.

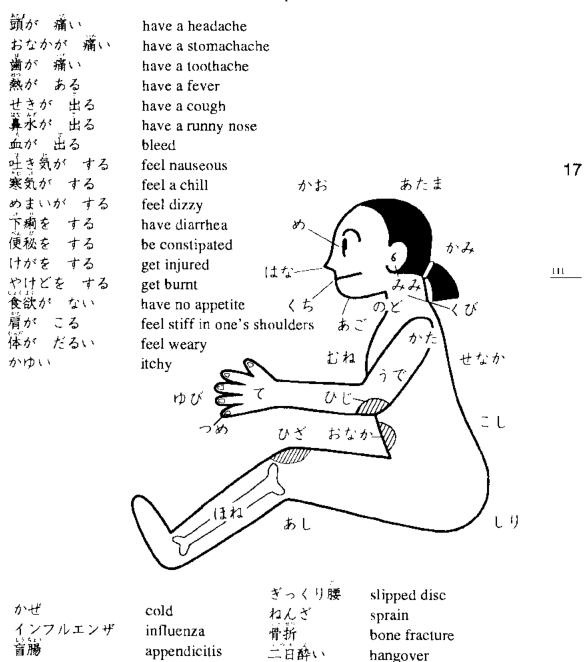
Matsumoto: Thank you very much, doctor.

17

### III. Reference Words & Information

## 体・病気 BODY & ILLNESS

## どう しましたか What seems to be the problem?



### IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb ない-form

The verb form used with ない is called the ない-form; that is to say, かか of かかない is the ない-form of かきます (write). How to make the ない-form is given below (see Main Textbook, Lesson 17, p. 140, 練習 A 1).

### 1) Group I

In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always the sound in the  $\vee$ -line. So, replace it with the sound of the あ-line to make a ない-form. The exceptions to this rule are such verbs as かいます、あいます、etc. (わ is the last sound of the ない-form in these verbs instead of あ.) (See Main Textbook, p. 2, "かなど拍.")

### 2) Group II

17

112

The t \ 1-form of verbs of this group is just the same as the t -form.

### 3) Group III

The  $x \cap form$  of  $l \not\equiv t$  is the same as the  $\not\equiv t$ -form.  $t \not\equiv t$  becomes  $t \in (x \cap f)$ .

## 2. Vない-form ないでください Please don't...

This expression is used to ask or instruct someone not to do something.

- ① わたしは 元気ですから、心配しないで ください。 I am fine, so please don't worry about me.
- ② ここで 写真を 撮らないで ください。 Please don't take pictures here.

## 3. Vない-form なければ なりません must...

This expression means something has to be done regardless of the will of the actor. Note that this doesn't have a negative meaning.

## 4. **Vない-form** なくてもいいです need not ...

This sentence pattern indicates that the action described by the verb does not have to be done.

④ あした 来なくても いいです。 You don't have to come tomorrow.

### 5. N (object) は

You learned in Lesson 6 that the particle  $\mathcal{E}$  is attached to the direct object of verbs. Here you learn that the object is made a topic by replacing  $\mathcal{E}$  with  $\mathcal{E}$ .

ここに 荷物を 置かないで ください。

Please don't put parcels here.

(5) 荷物は ここに 置かないで ください。
 As for parcels, don't put them here.
 会社の 食堂で 昼ごはんを 食べます。
 I have lunch in the company cafeteria.

⑥ 昼ごはん<u>は</u> 会社の 食堂で 食べます。 As for lunch, I have it in the company cafeteria.

### 6. N(time)までに V

The point in time indicated by  $\sharp \mathcal{T} = \emptyset$  is the time limit by which an action is to be done.

⑦ 会議は 5時までに 終わります。 The meeting will be over by five.

⑧ 土曜日までに本を返さなければなりません。

I must return the book by Saturday.

[Note] Make sure you do not confuse  $\sharp \, \tau \, \tau$  with the particle  $\sharp \, \tau$ .

5時まで働きます。

I work until five. (L. 4)

17

## Lesson 18

## I. Vocabulary

であひうます II I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	予約します	be able to, can wash play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.) sing collect, gather throw away exchange, change drive reserve, book
けんがくします Ⅲ	見学します	visit some place for study
ピアノ	. = , ,	piano
- メートル		- meter

こくさい~ 国際~ international ~

げんきん 現金 cash

しゅみ趣味hobbyにっき日記diary

[お]いのり [お]祈り prayer (~をします: pray)

かちょう課長section chiefぶちょう部長department chiefしゃちょう社長president of a company

18

\_. 114

## △会話>

動物 馬 へえ それは おもしろいですね。

なかなか 牧場

ほんとうですか。 ぜひ

animal

horse

Really! (used when expressing surprise)

That must be interesting.

not easily (used with negatives)

ranch, stock farm

Really?

by all means

ビートルズ

the Beatles, famous British music group

### II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Mr. Miller can read Kanji.
- 2. My hobby is watching films.
- 3. I write in my diary before I go to bed.

### Example Sentences

- 1. Can you ski?
  - ···Yes, I can. But I am not very good at it.
- 2. Can you use a personal computer, Ms. Maria?
  - ···No, I can't.
- 3. Until what time can we visit Osaka Castle?
  - ...It is open until five o'clock.
- 4. Can I pay by credit card?
  - ··· I am sorry, but please pay in cash.
- 5. What is your hobby?
  - ···Collecting old clocks and watches.
- 6. Must Japanese children learn Hiragana before they enter school?
  - ...No, they need not.
- 7. Please take this medicine before meals.
  - ···Yes, I will.
- 8. When did you get married?
  - ···We got married three years ago.

#### Conversation

### What is your hobby?

Yamada: What is your hobby, Mr. Santos?

Santos: Photography.

Yamada: What kind of photos do you take?

Santos: Photos of animals. I like those of horses, especially.

Yamada: Oh, that's interesting.

Have you taken photos of horses since you came to Japan?

Santos: No

You can hardly ever see horses in Japan.

Yamada: There is a lot of pastureland for horses in Hokkaido.

Santos: Really?

Then I would really like to go there on summer vacation.

18

## III. Reference Words & Information

## 動き ACTIONS

飛ぶ fly	跳。 jump	登る climb	走る run
泳ぐ swim	もぐる dive	飛び込む dive into	逆立ちする stand upside down
はう crawl	ける kick	振る wave	持ち上げる lift
2500			5
投げる throw	たたく pat	हैं। ८ pull	押す push
曲げる bend	伸ばす extend	転ぶ fall down	振り向く look back

18

117 .\_

### IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb dictionary form

This form is the basic form of a verb. Verbs are given in this form in the dictionary, hence the name. How to make the dictionary form is given below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 18, p. 148, 練習 A 1.)

- 1) Group I In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always in the い-line. Replace it with the sound in the う-line to make the dictionary form. (See Main Textbook, p. 2, "かなど拍")
- 2) Group II Attach 5 to the # f-form.

## 2. N V dictionary form こと が できます can...

できます is the verb which expresses ability or possibility. A noun and V dictionary form こと before  $\mathfrak{H}$  indicates the content of ability or possibility.

1) Noun

18

118

Nouns placed before  $\mathscr{V}$  are mostly nouns which express actions such as driving a car, shopping, skiing, dancing, etc. Nouns such as CIELT, which is associated with the action (!tr), or !tr), which is associated with the action U < 0, can also be used here.

- ① ミラーさんは 日本語が できます。 Mr. Miller can speak Japanese.
- ② 雪が たくさん 降りましたから、ことしは スキーが できます。 It's snowed a lot, so we can ski this year.
- 2) Verb

③ ミラーさんは 漢字を 読む ことが できます。

nominalized phrase Mr. Miller can read Kanji.

④ <u>カードで払う こと</u>が できます。 You can pay by credit card. nominalized phrase

As shown in 5 and 6 below, V dictionary form 2 2 can express the content of hobbies more concretely than the noun alone can do.

- ⑤ わたしの 趣味は 音楽です。 My hobby is music.
- ⑥ わたしの 趣味は 音楽を 聞く ことです。 My hobby is listening to the music.

4. V₁ dictionary form Nの まえに、V₂ ..., beforc... Quantifier (period)

1) Verb

This sentence pattern indicates that the action of  $V_2$  occurs before the action of  $V_1$  takes place. Even when the tense of  $V_2$  is in the past tense or the future tense,  $V_1$  is always in the dictionary form.

- ⑦ 日本へ 来る まえに、日本語を 勉強しました。 I studied Japanese before I came to Japan.
- ⑧ 寝る まえに、本を 読みます。 I read a book before I go to bed.

2) Noun

When  $\exists \lambda \vdash \Box$  comes after a noun, the particle O is put between the noun and  $\exists \lambda \vdash \Box$ . Nouns before  $\exists \lambda \vdash \Box$  are nouns which express actions or nouns which imply actions.

- ⑨ 食事のまえに、手を洗います。 I wash my hands before cating.
- 3) Quantifier (period)

When  $\sharp \lambda \bowtie$  comes after a quantifier (period), the particle  $\mathcal O$  is not necessary.

® 田中さんは 1時間まえに、出かけました。 Mr. Tanaka left an hour ago.

5. なかなか

When t t h t t h is accompanied by a negative expression, it means "not easily" or "not as expected."

① 日本では なかなか 馬を 見る ことが できません。 In Japan we can rarely see horses.

[Note] If of CIERCIA in ① is attached to T to emphasize the location or area under discussion.

6. ぜひ

ぜひ is used with expressions of hope and request such as ほしいです, Vます-form たいです and Vで-form ください and emphasizes the meaning of the expressions.

- ② ぜひ 北海道へ 行きたいです。 I want to go to Hokkaido very much.
- ③ ぜひ 遊びに 来て ください。 Please come to my place. (L. 25)

18

## Lesson 19

I. Vocabulary		
のぼります I 「やまに~〕		climb [a mountain]
とまります [ホテルに~]		stay [at a hotel]
そうじします 🎞	掃除します	clean (a room)
せんたくします Ⅱ	洗濯します	wash (clothes)
れんしゅうします Ⅱ	[練習します	practice
なります I		become
ねむい つよい よわい ちょうしが いい ちょうしが わるい		S
ちょうし	調子	condition
ゴルフ すもう パチンコ	相撲	golf (〜をします: play golf) sumo wrestling pinball game (〜をします: play pachinko)
おちゃ	お茶	tea ceremony
<i>U</i>	B	day, date

いちど いちども

一度 一度 も

once

だんだん もうすぐ not once, never (used with negatives) gradually

soon

おかげさまで

Thank you. (used when expressing

gratitude for help received)

▽乾寒ダ荷し無体ケ話 エもしないト

Bottoms up./Cheers!
actually, to tell the truth
diet (~をします: go on a diet)
many times
but, however
excessive, impossible
good for one's health
cake

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

葛飾 北斎

famous Edo period wood block artist and painter (1760-1849)

### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I have been to see sumo.
- 2. On holidays I play tennis, take walks and so on.
- 3. It's going to get hotter and hotter from now on.

### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Have you been to Hokkaido?
  - ...Yes, I once have. I went there two years ago with my friends.
- 2. Have you ever ridden a horse?
  - ... No, I never have. I am eager to try it.
- 3. What did you do on your winter vacation?
  - ···I visited temples and shrines in Kyoto, held a party with friends, and so on.
- 4. What would you like to do in Japan?
  - ... I would like to go on a trip, learn the tea ceremony and so on.
- 5. How are you feeling?
  - ...I've got better, thank you.
- 6. You have become good at Japanese.
  - ... Thank you, but I still have a long way to go.
- 7. Teresa, what would you like to be?
  - ... I would like to be a doctor.

#### Conversation

#### As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow

All: Cheers!

Ms. Matsumoto: Why, Ms. Maria, you're not eating much.

Maria: No. To tell the truth, I have been on a diet since yesterday. Ms. Matsumoto: Have you? I have tried being on a diet many times, too.

Maria: What kind of diets have you tried?

Ms. Matsumoto: I tried eating only apples, and drinking a lot of water,

and so on.

Mr. Matsumoto: I'm afraid strict diets are not good for your health.

Maria: You are right.

Ms. Matsumoto: Ms. Maria, this cake is delicious.

Maria: Is it?

.... I'll start dieting again tomorrow.

19

## III. Reference Words & Information

## 伝統文化·娯楽 TRADITIONAL CULTURE & ENTERTAINMENT



19

### 1. Verb た-form

In this lesson you learn the た-form. How to make the た-form is shown below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 19, p. 156, 練習 A 1.)

The tz-form is made by changing  $\tau$  and  $\tau$  of the  $\tau$ -form into tz and tz respectively.

	7-form	-	<i>†</i> z-form
Group I	かい、 <u>て</u>	<b>→</b>	かいた
	のんで	<b>→</b>	のんだ
Group II	たべて	-	たべた
Group II	きて	-	き <u>た</u>
	して	-	した

### 2. Vた-form ことが あります have the experience of V-ing

This sentence pattern is used to describe what one has experienced in the past. This is basically the same sentence as  $\hbar \hbar U U N M J J M$  which you learned in Lesson 9. The content of one's experience is expressed by the nominalized phrase  $V \hbar$ -form U L.

Note that it is, therefore, different from a sentence which merely states the fact that one did something at a certain time in the past.

② 去年 北海道で 馬に 乗りました。 I rode a horse in Hokkaido last year.

## 3. Vた-form リ、Vた-form リ します V...and V..., and so on

You learned an expression for referring to a few things and persons among many ( $\sim \stackrel{\leftarrow}{\sim} \sim [\stackrel{\leftarrow}{\sim} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{\sim}]$ ) in Lesson 10. The sentences learned here are used in referring to some actions among many other actions. The tense of this sentence pattern is shown at the end of the sentence.

- ③ 日曜日は テニスを したり、映画を 見たり します。 On Sundays I play tennis, see a movie and so on.
- ④ 日曜日は テニスを したり、映画を 見たり しました。

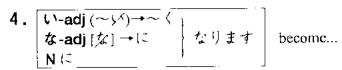
Last Sunday I played tennis, saw a movie and so on.

[Note] Make sure that you don't confuse the meaning of this sentence pattern with that of the 7-form sentence (5) which you learned in Lesson 16.

⑤ 日曜日は テニスを して、映画を見ました。 Last Sunday I played tennis and then saw a movie.

19

In ⑤ it is clear that seeing a movie took place after playing tennis. In ⑥ there is no time relation between the two activities. These activities are mentioned as example activities among the activities done on Sunday to imply that one did other activities besides them. And it is not natural that actions usually done by everybody every day such as getting up in the morning, taking meals, going to bed at night, etc., are mentioned.



なります means "become" and indicates changes in a state or condition.

⑥ 寒い 
$$\rightarrow$$
 寒く なります get cold  $\bigcirc$  元気 [な]  $\rightarrow$  元気に なります get well  $\bigcirc$  8 25歳  $\rightarrow$  25歳に なります become 25 years old

#### 5. そうですね

そうですね is used when you agree or sympathize with what your partner in conversation said. そうですか with a falling intonation is a similar expression to this (see Lesson 2, 6). そうですか(こ) is, however, an expression of your conviction or exclamation after getting information which was unknown to you, while そうですね is used to express your agreement or sympathy with your partner in conversation when he/she refers to something you agree with or already know.

19

## Lesson 20

## I. Vocabulary

いります I 「ビザが ~〕	要ります	need, require [a visa]
しらべます Ⅱ	調べます	check, investigate
なおします 1	直します	repair, correct
しゅうりします Ⅱ	修理します	repair
でんわします Ⅲ	電話します	phone
( <b>f</b> <	僕	I (an informal equivalent of わたし used by men)
きみ	君	you (an informal equivalent of あなた
~ <	~君	used by men) Mr. (an informal equivalent of ~さん
	- A <del>D</del>	used by men)
うん		yes (an informal equivalent of (\$\forall 1)
ううん		no (an informal equivalent of いいえ)
サラリーマン		salaried worker, office worker
ことば		word, language
ぶっか	物価	commodity prices
きもの	着物	kimono (traditional Japanese attire)
ビザ		visa
はじめ	初め	the beginning
おわり	終わり	the end
こっち		this way, this place (an informal equivalent of こちら)
そっち		this way, that place (an informal equivalent of そちら)
あっち どっち		this way, that place over there (an informal equivalent of あちら)
どっち		which one (between two things), which way, where (an informal equivalent of $\forall 5 \beta$ )

20

このあいだ この間 みんなで 〜けど

D間 the other day all together

~, but (an informal equivalent of  $\mathfrak{H}^{s}$ )

△会話>

国へ 帰るの? どう するの? どう しようかな。 よかったら いろいろ

Are you going back to your country? What will you do? What shall I do? if you like various

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Mr. Santos did not come to the party.
- 2. Things are expensive in Japan.
- 3. The sea around Okinawa was beautiful.
- 4. Today is my birthday.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Will you have some ice cream?
  - ···Yes, I will.
- 2. Do you have any scissors?
  - ···No, I don't.
- 3. Did you see Ms. Kimura yesterday?
  - ···No, I didn't.
- 4. Shall we go to Kyoto all together tomorrow?
  - ···Yes. That sounds nice.
- 5. Is the curry delicious?
  - ...Yes, it is hot, but delicious.
- 6. Are you free now?
  - ...Yes, I am. Why?

Give me a hand, please.

- 7. Do you have a dictionary?
  - ···No, I don't.

#### Conversation

#### What will you do for the summer vacation?

Kobayashi: Are you going home for the summer vacation?

Thawaphon: No, I won't. Though I want to....

What about you, Mr. Kobayashi?

Kobayashi: Well, what shall I do?

Have you climbed Mt. Fuji, Mr. Thawaphon?

Thawaphon: No, I haven't.

Kobayashi: Then, if you'd like, shall we go together?

Thawaphon: Yes, okay. When?

Kobayashi: How about the beginning of August?

Thawaphon: Sounds good.

Kobayashi: Then, I will check up on various things and call you later.

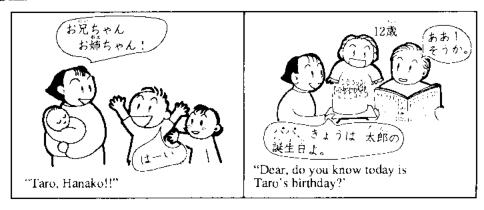
Thawaphon: Thanks. I'll be waiting.

20

#### III. Reference Words & Information

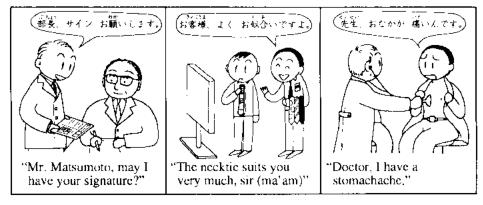
## 美の呼び芳 HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE





In families, people call each other from the viewpoint of the youngest of the family. A parent calls his/her eldest son or daughter " $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{B}$ " (elder brother) or " $\mathcal{B} \rtimes \mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{B}$ " (elder sister) respectively, standing in the position of his/her younger sister or brother.

When parents talk in the presence of their children, the husband calls his wife "おかあさん" or "ママ" (mother), and the wife, her husband "おとうさん" or "パッペ" (father). This practice, however, has been changing recently, and the number of couples who call each other by their names is increasing.



In society, people call each other by the names of their role in the group to which they belong. At work, a subordinate calls his boss by his job title. At shops a shop assistant calls his/her customer "おきゃくさま" (Mr./Ms. customer). Doctors are called "せんせい" (teacher) by their patients.

20

Japanese language has two styles of speech: polite style and plain style.

polite style	plain style
あした 東京へ 行きます。	あした 東京へ 行く。
I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.	I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.
毎日忙しいです。	毎日忙しい。
I am busy every day.	I am busy every day.
相撲が 好きです。	相撲が 好きだ
I like sumo.	l like sumo.
富士山に登りたいです。	富士山に 登りたい。
I want to climb Mt. Fuji.	I want to climb Mt. Fuji.
ドイツへ 行った ことが ありません。	ドイツへ 行った ことが ない。
I have never been to Germany.	I have never been to Germany.

The predicates which are used in polite style sentences and accompanied by either です or ます are called the polite form, while the predicates used in plain style sentences are called the plain form. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 20, p. 166, 練習 A 1)

#### 2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain style

- 1) The polite style can be used at anytime in any place and to anybody. Therefore, the polite style is used most commonly in daily conversation between adults who are not close friends. It is used when talking to a person one has met for the first time, to one's superiors, or even to persons in a similar age group to whom one is not very close. The polite style may be chosen when one talks to a person who is younger or lower in rank yet not so close. The plain style is used when talking to one's close friends, colleagues and family members.

  Note that you need to be careful about how much politeness is needed, basing this on the age of your conversation partner and your type of relationship. If the plain style is used inappropriately, you could sound rough and impolite, so when you cannot tell the situation it is safer to use the polite style.
- 2) The plain style is commonly used in written work. Newspapers, books, theses and diaries are all written in the plain style. Most letters are written in the polite style.

20

#### Conversation in the plain style

- 1) Questions in the plain style generally omit the particle  $\phi$ , which denotes a question, and end with a rising intonation, such as  $\mathcal{O}\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{I})$ .
  - ① コーヒーを飲む? (ナ) ···うん、飲む。(^)

Do you want a coffee? ... Yes, I do.

- 2) In noun and な-adjective questions, だ, which is the plain form of です, is omitted. In an answer in the affirmative, ending the sentence with  $t^2$  could sound too rough. You can either omit  $\mathcal{K}$  or add some sentence final particle to soften the tone of the sentence. Women seldom use  $t_{i}^{2}$ .
  - ② 今晚 暇?

Are you free tonight?

(used by both men and women)

- …うん、暇/暇だ/暇だよ。 …Yes, I am. (used by men)
- ···Yes, I am. (used by women)
- …うん、暇/暇よ。 …Yes, I am. (us: …ううん、暇じゃ ない。 …No, I am not.

(used by both men and women)

20

- 3) In the plain style, certain particles are often omitted if the meaning of the sentence is evident from the context.
  - ③ ごはん[を] 食べる?

Will you take a meal?

④ あした 京都[へ] 行かない?

Won't you come to Kyoto tomorrow with me?

131

- ⑤ このりんご[は] おいしいね。 This apple is tasty, isn't it?
- ⑥ そこに はさみ [が] ある? Is there a pair of scissors there?

で、に、から、まで、と、etc., however, are not omitted because the meaning of the sentence may not be clear without them.

- 4) In the plain style, who of V 7-form was is also often dropped.
  - ⑦辞書、持って [い] る? Do you have a dictionary? …うん、持って [い] る。 … Yes, I do. …ううん、持って [い] ない。 … No, I don't.

5) けど

If  $\mathcal{E}$  has the same function as  $\mathcal{N}$ , which is used to connect two sentences (see Lesson 8, 7 and Lesson 14, 7). It is often used in conversations.

- ⑧ その カレーライス[は] おいしい?
  - …うん、辛いけど、おいしい。

Is that curry and rice tasty?

- ···Yes, it's hot but tasty.
- ⑨ 相撲の チケット[が] あるけど いっしょに 行かない?

I have tickets for sumo. Won't you come with me.

···Sure.

## Lesson 21

## I. Vocabulary

•		
たります ∏ かちます I	言います 足ります 勝ちます 負けます [お祭りが~	
むだ[な] ふべん[な]	不便[な]	wasteful inconvenient
おなじ	同じ	the same
すごい		awful, great (expresses astonishment or admiration)
しゅしょう だいとうりょう		prime minister president
せいじ ニュース スピーチ	政治	politics news speech (~を します: make a speech)
しあい	試合	game, match
アルバイト いけん	意見	side job (~をします: work part time) opinion
[お]はなし	[お]話	talk, speech, what one says, story (~ & L \( \pm \) talk, tell a story)
ユーモア		humor
むだ		waste
デザイン		design
こうつう	交通	transportation, traffic

rush hour

21

134

ラッシュ

さいきん 最近 recently, these days たぶん probably, perhaps, maybe きっと surely ほんとうに really そんなに not so much (used with negatives) ~に ついて about ∼, concerning ∼ しかたが ありません。 There is no other choice./It can't be helped. 【会話】 しばらくですね。 It's been a long time (since I last saw you)./Long time no see. ~でも 飲みませんか。 How about drinking  $\sim$  or something? 見ないと……。 I've got to watch it. もちろん of course \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

カンガルー キャプテン・クック

kangaroo Captain James Cook (1728 - 79)

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. I think it will rain tomorrow.
- 2. The prime minister said that he would go to the U.S.A. next month.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Which is more important, work or family?
  - ... I think both are important.
- 2. What do you think of Japan?
  - ... I think things are expensive in Japan.
- 3. Where is Mr. Miller?
  - ... I think he is in the meeting room.
- 4. Does Mr. Miller know this news?
  - ···No, I don't think he does. He was on a business trip.
- 5. Has little Teresa fallen asleep yet?
  - ... Yes, I think she has.
- 6. Do you pray before meals?
  - ... No, we don't, but we say "Itadakimasu."
- 7. Did you say something in the meeting?
  - ···Yes. I said that a lot of photocopying had been wastefully done.
- 8. In July there will be a festival in Kyoto, won't there?
  - ···Yes, there will be.

#### Conversation

#### I think so, too

Matsumoto: Mr. Santos, it's been a long time. Santos: Mr. Matsumoto, how are you?

Matsumoto: I'm fine. How about going for a beer or something?

Santos: That sounds good.

\_\_\_\_\_

Santos: There will be a soccer game between Japan and Brazil

from ten tonight.

Matsumoto: Yes, there will. I must be sure to watch it.

Which team do you think will win?

Santos: Of course, Brazil.

Matsumoto: But I tell you recently Japan have got a lot better.

Santos: I think so, too....

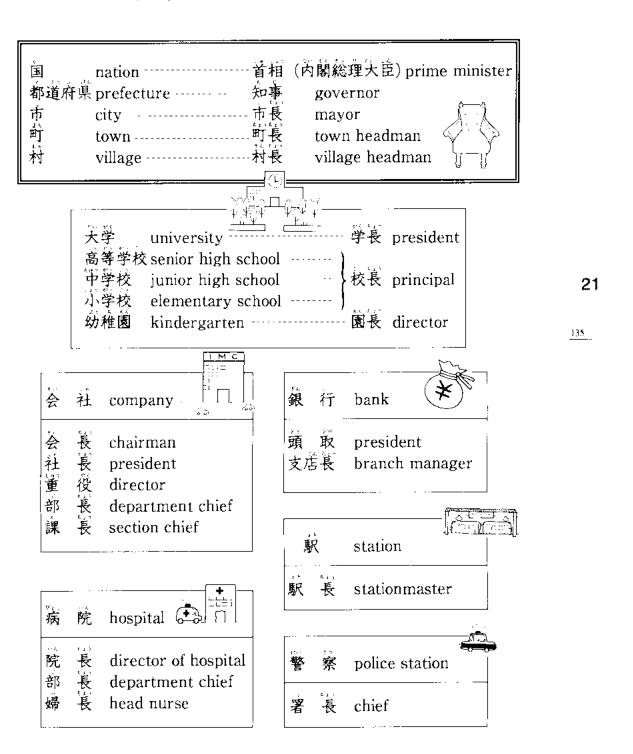
Oh, it's time that we went home.

Matsumoto: Yes, it is. Let's go home.

21

#### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 役職名 POSITIONS IN SOCIETY



1) When expressing conjecture

- ① あした 雨が 降ると 思います。 I think it will rain tomorrow.
- ② テレサちゃんは もう 寝たと 思います。

I think Teresa has already gone to bed.

When the content of conjecture is negative in nature, make the sentence before  $\angle$  negative.

③ ミラーさんは この ニュースを 知って いますか。 …いいえ、たぶん 知らないと 思います。

Does Mr. Miller know this news?

... No, I don't think he does.

- 2) When expressing one's opinion
  - ④ 日本は 物価が 高いと 思います。

I think that prices are high in Japan.

The expression  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  ) (  $\sim$  (  $\sim$  )

⑤ 新しい 空港に ついて どう 思いますか。 …きれいですが、ちょっと 交通が 不便だと 思います。

What do you think of the new airport?

... I think that it is clean but the access to it is not easy.

Agreement or disagreement with other people's opinions can be expressed as follows.

⑥ A:ファクスは 便利ですね。

B:わたしも そう 思います。

C:わたしは そう[は] 態いません。

A: Fax machines are convenient, aren't they?

B: I think so, too.

C: I don't think so.

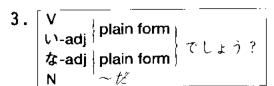
## 2. "S" と言います say...

The content expressed with  $(1) \notin f$  is indicated by the particle  $\mathcal{L}$ .

- 1) When quoting directly what someone says or said, repeat exactly what they say as in the following structure.
  - ⑦ 寝る まえに 「お休みなさい」と 言います。 We say "Good night" before going to bed.
  - ⑧ ミラーさんは 「来週 東京へ 出張します」と 言いました。 Mr. Miller said "I will go to Tokyo on a business trip next week."

21

- 2) When quoting indirectly what someone says or said, the plain form is used before  $\angle$ . The tense of the quoted sentence is not affected by the tense of the main sentence.
  - ⑨ ミラーさんは 来週 東京へ 出張すると 言いました。Mr. Miller said that he would go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.



When the speaker expects that the listener has some knowledge on the topic being discussed and that the listener will agree with the speaker's view,  $\mathcal{T}\cup\mathcal{L}$  is said with a rising intonation to confirm the listener's agreement.

⑩ あした パーティーに 行くでしょう? …ええ、行きます。

You are going to the party tomorrow, aren't you?

···Yes, I am.

① 北海道は 寒かったでしょう? It was cold in Hokkaido, wasn't it? …いいえ、そんなに 寒くなかったです。 …No, it wasn't that cold.

21

#### 4. N. (place)で N2が あります

When  $N_2$  expresses such events as a party, concert, festival, incident, disaster and so on,  $B \cup E = 1$  means "to take place" or "to be held."

② 東京で 日本と ブラジルの サッカーの 試合が あります。 A football game between Japan and Brazil will be held in Tokyo.

#### 5. N(occasion) ₹

When some action takes place on a certain occasion, that occasion is followed by  $\mathcal{T}$ .

③ 会議で 何か 意見を 言いましたか。 Did you give your opinion at the meeting?

#### 6. N T t V

The is used to give an example out of things of the same kind (drinks in the case of (4)) when one encourages or advises someone to do something or when one makes a suggestion.

⑭ ちょっと ビールでも 飲みませんか。

Shall we drink beer or something?

#### 7. V ない-form ないと……

This expression is made by omitting いけません from Vない-form ないといけません. Vない-form ないと いけません is similar to Vない-form なければ なりません which you learned in Lesson 17.

⑮ もう 帰らないと……。 I have to go home now.

۱ ۲

## Lesson 22

## I. Vocabulary

おめでとう ございます。

きますⅡ	着ます	put on [a shirt, etc.]
[シャツを ~] はきます I	「ttn.→ l	put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]
[くつを ~] かぶります I	[靴を~]	put on [a hat, etc.]
[ぼうしを~] かけます Ⅱ	[帽子を~]	put on [glasses]
[めがねを ~] うまれます Ⅱ	[眼鏡を ~] 生まれます	be born
コート		coat
		Coat
スーツ		suit
スーツ	帽子	suit
スーツセーター	帽子 眼鏡	suit sweater
スーツ セーター ぼうし		suit sweater hat, cap

Congratulations, (used on birthdays, at

weddings, New Year's Day, etc.)

22

→会話▶

こちら **家賃** 

うーん。

ダイニングキチン

余暇開発センター

レジャー白書

和室

押し入れ

布団

八川

アパート

this (polite equivalent of □ 11)

house rent

Let me see.

kitchen with a dining area

Japanese-style room

Japanese-style closet

Japanese-style mattress and quilt

apartment

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

万里の 長城

**Paris** 

the Great Wall of China

Center for Developing Leisure Activities

white paper on leisure



#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. This is a cake Mr. Miller made.
- 2. That man who is over there is Mr. Miller.
- 3. I have forgotten the words I learned yesterday.
- 4. I have no time to go shopping.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. This is a photo I took on the Great Wall of China.
  - ... Is it? It is superb, isn't it?
- 2. Which is the picture Ms. Karina drew?
  - ... It is that one. That picture of the sea.
- 3. Who is that woman wearing the kimono?
  - ···That is Ms. Kimura.
- 4. Mr. Yarnada, where did you first meet your wife?
  - ...It was Osaka Castle.
- 5. How was the concert you went to with Ms. Kimura?
  - ...It was very good.
- 6. What's wrong with you?
  - ··· I have lost the umbrella I bought yesterday.
- 7. What kind of house do you want?
  - ··· I want a house that has a big garden.
- 8. Would you like to go for a drink this evening?
  - ... I am sorry, but this evening I have promised to meet a friend.

#### Conversation

#### What kind of apartment would you like?

Real estate agent: How about this one?

The rent is 80,000 yen.

Wang: Ummmm. It's far from the station.

Agent: Then how about this one?

This one's convenient. It's a three-minute walk from the

station.

Wang: Oh.

A kitchen-dining room, a Japanese-style room, and....

Excuse me. What is this?

Agent: It's an "oshiire."

It's a place to put "futon" in.

Wang: I see.

Can I take a look at this apartment today?

Agent: Yes. Shall we go now?

Wang: Yes, please.

22

## III. Reference Words & Information

## 衣服 CLOTHES

スーツ suit	ワンピース one-piece dress	上着 jacket	ズボン/パンツ trousers/pants
			ジーンズ jeans
スカート skirt	ブラウス blouse	ワイシャツ [white] shirt	セーター sweater
マ <u>フ</u> ラー muffler 手袋 gloves	下着 underwear	くつした socks パンスト panty hose, tights	着物 kimono
			# obi
オーバーコート overcoat レインコート	ネクタイ necktie ベルト belt	ハイヒール high heels	
raincoat		ブーツ boots 運動靴 sneakers	ぞうり たび zori tabi

22

#### IV. Grammar Explanation

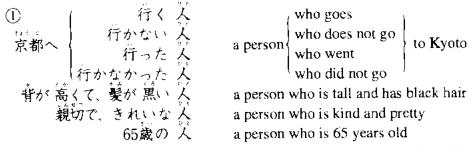
#### 1. Noun modification

You learned how to modify nouns in Lesson 2 and Lesson 8.

In Japanese, whatever modifies a word, whether it's a word or a sentence, it always comes before the word to be modified. Here you learn another way to modify nouns.

#### 2. Noun modification by sentences

The predicate of the sentence which modifies a noun is in the plain form.
 In the case of な-adjective sentences, ~だ becomes ~な. In the case of noun sentences ~だ becomes ~の.



- 2) Nouns, which are various elements of the sentence, are picked out of it and can be modified by it.
  - ② わたしは 先週 <u>映画</u>を 見ました →わたしが 先週 見た <u>映画</u>
    I saw a movie last week →the movie that I saw last week
  - ③ ワンさんは 病院で働いて います→ワンさんが 働いている 病院
    Mr. Wang works at a hospital →the hospital where Mr. Wang works
  - ④ わたしは あした 友達に 会います→わたしが あした 会う 友達
    I will meet a friend tomorrow →the friend whom I will meet tomorrow

When the nouns underlined in ②, ③ and ④ are modified, the particles  $\checkmark$ ,  $\checkmark$ , and  $\checkmark$  attached to them respectively are unnecessary.

22

- 3) The noun modified by a sentence ("the house where Mr. Miller lived" in the example sentences below) can be used in various parts of a sentence.
  - ⑤ これは ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちです。
    This is the house where Mr. Miller lived.
  - ⑥ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちは 古いです。
    The house where Mr. Miller lived is old.
  - ① <u>ミラーさんが 住んで いた うち</u>を 買いました。 I bought the house where Mr. Miller lived.
  - ⑧ わたしは ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちが 好きです。 I like the house where Mr. Miller lived.
  - ⑨ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちに 猫が いました。 There was a cat in the house where Mr. Miller lived.
  - ⑩ ミラーさんが 住んで いた うちへ 行った ことが あります。
    I have been to the house where Mr. Miller lived

#### 3. Nが

When a sentence modifies a noun, the subject in the sentence is indicated by  $t^{s}$ .

ミラーさん<u>は</u> ケーキを 作りました。 Mr. Miller baked a cake. 22

- ① これ<u>は</u> ミラーさん<u>が</u> 作った ケーキです。
  This is the cake which Mr. Miller baked.
- ② わたし<u>は</u> カリナさん<u>が</u> かいた 絵が 好きです。 I like the picture that Ms. Karina drew.
- ③ [あなたは] 彼が 生まれた 所を 知って いますか。 Do you know the place where he was born?

## 4. Vdictionary form 時間/約束/用事

When expressing the time for doing some activity, put the dictionary form of the action before  $U \cap \mathcal{L}$ .

④ わたしは 朝ごはんを 食べる 時間が ありません。 I have no time to eat breakfast,

You can also say the content of the arrangement (appointment), etc., by putting the dictionary form of that action before  $\forall \land \forall \land \forall \land \land$ .

- ⑤ わたしは 友達と 映画を 見る 約束が あります。 I have an arrangement to see a movie with a friend of mine.
- 個 きょうは 市役所へ 行く 用事が あります。 I have something to do at the city hall today.

## I. Vocabulary

ききますI		ask [the teacher]
[せんせいに~]		4
まわします Ι		turn
ひきます I		pull
かえます Ⅱ		change
さわります I	触ります	touch [a door]
[ドアに~]		
でます Ⅱ		•
[おつりが ~]		
		[a watch] move, work
[とけいが~]	[時計が~]	
あるきます I	歩きます	walk [along a road]
[みちを~]		
わたります I	渡ります	cross [a bridge]
[はしを~]	[橋を ~]	
きを つけます Ⅱ	気を つけます	pay attention [to cars], take care
[くるまに ~]		
ひっこしします Ⅲ	引っ越しします	move (house)
でんきや	電気屋	electrician
~ +>	~屋	person of $\sim$ shop
サイズ		size
おと	音	sound
きかい	機械	machine
つまみ		knob
こしょう	故障	breakdown (~します:break down)
みち	道	road, way
こうさてん	交差点	crossroad
しんごう	信号	traffic light
かど	角	corner
はし	橋	bridge
ちゅうしゃじょう	駐車場	parking lot, car park

一目

the -th (indicating order)

[お]しょうがつ

[お]正月

New Year's Day

ごちそうさま[でした]。

That was delicious. (said after eating or

drinking)

△会話>

建物 外国人登録証

building

alien registration card

 ${\bf v} {\bf v$ 

聖徳太子

Prince Shotoku (574 = 622)

法隆寺

Horyuji Temple, a temple in Nara

Prefecture built by Prince Shotoku at the

beginning of the 7th century

fictitious tea

fictitious station

fictitious bus stop

23

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.
- 2. Push this button, and change will come out.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Do you often watch TV?
  - ···Well, I watch it when there is a baseball game on.
- 2. What do you do when there is nothing in the refrigerator?
  - ... I go out and eat something at a nearby restaurant.
- 3. Did you turn off the air conditioner when you left the meeting room?
  - ···I am sorry, I forgot.
- 4. Where do you buy your clothes and shoes, Mr. Santos?
  - ··· I buy them in my country when I go back on summer vacation or New Year vacation.

Because the things in Japan are small for me.

- 5. What is that?
  - ···It's "Genki-cha." I take this when I'm not in good shape.
- 6. Won't you come to my house when you are free?
  - ... Thank you. I would love to.
- 7. Did you work part-time when you were a student?
  - ···Yes. I sometimes did.
- 8. The volume is low, isn't it?
  - ... Turn this knob to the right, and the volume will go up.
- 9. Excuse me. Where is the City Hall?
  - ···Go straight down this road, and you will find it on your left.

#### Conversation

#### How can I get there?

Librarian: Hello. This is Midori Library.

Karina: Er, could you tell me how to get there?

Librarian: Take a No. 12 bus from Honda Station, and get off at

Toshokan-mae. It's the third stop.

Karina: The third stop, right?

Librarian: Yes. When you get off the bus, you will see a park in

front of you.

Our library is the white building in the park.

Karina: I see.

Is anything required when I borrow books?

Librarian: Are you a foreigner?

Karina: Yes, I am.

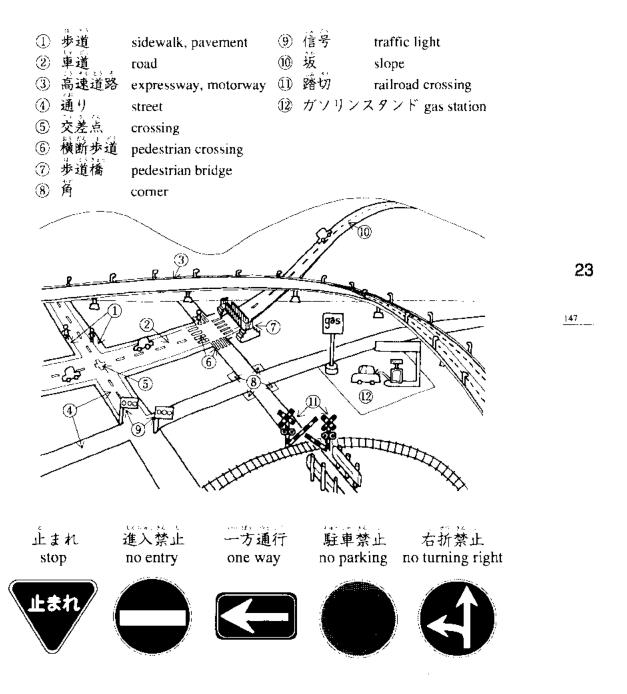
Librarian: Then, please bring your alien registration card.

Karina: Yes, I will. Thank you very much.

23

#### III. Reference Words & Information

## 道路・交通 ROAD & TRAFFIC



#### IV. Grammar Explanation

# 1. V dictionary form V ない-form い-adj (~い) とき、~ When..., ... な-adjな Nの

① 図書館で 本を 借りる とき、カードが 要ります。

When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.

- ② 使い方が わからない とき、わたしに 聞いて ください。 When you don't know how to use it, ask me.
- ③ 体の 調子が 悪い とき、「元気茶」を 飲みます。 When I'm not in good shape, I drink "Genki-cha."
- ④ 暇な とき、うちへ 遊びに 来ませんか。 Won't you come to my place when you are free?
- ③ 妻が 病気の とき、会社を 休みます。 When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.
- ⑥ 若い とき、あまり 勉強しませんでした。 When I was young, I did not study much.
- ⑦ 子どもの とき、よく 川で 泳ぎました。 I used to swim in a river when I was a child.

The tense of adjective sentences and noun sentences which modify  $\mathcal{E}$  is not affected by the tense of the main sentence (see 6 and 7).

## 2. V dictionary form とき、~

When the dictionary form of the predicate is put before  $\angle \mathcal{F}$  it indicates the non-completion of the action, and when the  $\angle$ -form of the predicate is put before  $\angle \mathcal{F}$  it indicates the completion of the action.

⑧ 国へ 帰る とき、かばんを 買いました。

I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

③ 国へ 帰った とき、かばんを 買いました。

I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

In 8, かえる indicates that at the time being referred to the action had not been completed, that the speaker had not reached his/her country yet and that he/she bought a bag somewhere on his/her way there (Japan is included). In 9, かえった indicates that the action was completed and the speaker bought a bag after arriving in his/her country.

23

## 3. V dictionary form $\mathcal{E}$ , $\sim$ ..., then (inevitably)...

When expressing the situation where, as a result of a certain action, another action or matter inevitably happens,  $\succeq$  is used to connect the sentences.

⑩ この ボタンを 押すと、お釣りが 出ます。

Press this button, and the change will come out.

① これを 回すと、音が 大きく なります。

Turn this, and the volume will go up.

⑫ 右へ 曲がると、郵便局が あります。

Turn to the right, and you will find the post office.

Expressions of one's will, hope, invitation or request cannot be used in the sentence which follows  $\sim 2$ .

In those cases, the conditional expression  $-t_c$  is used instead of  $-\xi$  (see Lesson 25).

#### 4. N n adjective / V

You learned in Lesson 14 that the subject is indicated by  $\hbar^{\varsigma}$  when describing a natural phenomenon. When describing a state or a scene as it is, the subject is also indicated by  $\hbar^{\varsigma}$ .

③ 音が 小さいです。

The volume is low.

⑭ 電気が 明るく なりました。

The light became brighter.

⑤ この ボタンを 押すと、切符が 出ます。

Press this button, and a ticket will come out.

#### 5. N(place) ₹ V (verb of movement)

The particle  $\delta$  is used to denote the place where a person or a thing passes. The verb of movement such as  $2 \ell \ell \ell \ell \ell \ell \ell$ , then the pattern is a set of the pattern.

16 公園を 散歩します。

I take a walk in the park. (L. 13)

② 道を 渡ります。

I cross the road.

⑱ 交差点を 右へ 曲がります。

I turn to the right at the intersection.

23

### Lesson 24

#### I. Vocabulary

くれます Ⅱ give (me) つれていきます I 連れて行きます take (someone) つれて きます Ⅲ 連れて来ます bring (someone) 送ります おくります I escort [someone], go with [ひとを~] [人を~] しょうかいしますⅢ 紹介します introduce あんないします Ⅲ 案内します show around, show the way せつめいします Ⅲ 説明します explain いれます Ⅱ make [coffee] [コーヒーを~]

おじいさん/おじいちゃん grandfather, old man おばあさん/おばあちゃん grandmother, old woman

じゅんび 準備 preparation (~します: prepare)

いみ 意味 meaning

[お]かし [お]菓子 sweets, snacks

ぜんぶ 全部 all

じぶんで 自分で by oneself

✓会話♪ほかに 「車」「お」弁当

besides station wagon box lunch

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

母の 肖

Mother's Day

#### II. Translation

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.
- 2. I lent Ms. Kimura a book.
- 3. I was told the telephone number of the hospital by Mr. Yamada.
- 4. My mother sent me a sweater.

#### **Example Sentences**

- 1. Do you like your grandmother, Taro?
  - ···Yes, I do. She always gives me some sweets.
- 2. This is very delicious wine.
  - ···Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me. It's French wine.
- 3. Taro, what will you do for your mother on Mother's Day?
  - ··· I will play the piano for her.
- 4. Mr. Miller, did you cook all the dishes for the party yesterday by yourself?
  - ···No, Mr. Wang helped me.
- 5. Did you go by train?
  - ···No, Mr. Yamada drove me.

#### Conversation

#### Will you help me?

Karina: Mr. Wang, you are moving house tomorrow, aren't you?

Shall I come to help you?

Wang: Thank you.

Well, then, will you come around 9 o'clock?

Karina: Who else will come to help you?

Wang: Mr. Yamada and Mr. Miller are coming.

Karina: What about a car?

Wang: Mr. Yamada will lend me his station wagon.

Karina: What about lunch?

Wang: Well....

Karina: Shall I bring lunch? Wang: Thank you. Please.

Karina: Then see you tomorrow.

24

#### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 贈答の習慣 EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS

お年玉入学祝い

small gift of money given by parents and relatives to children on New Year's Day gift celebrating admission to schools

卒業祝い

graduation gift (money, stationery, book, etc.)

結婚祝い

wedding gift (money, household goods, etc.)

出産祝い

gift celebrating a birth (baby clothes, toys, etc.)

お中元 [Jul. or Aug.] お歳暮 [Dec.]

gift for a person whose care you are under, e.g., doctor, teacher, boss, etc. (food, etc.)

お香典 お見舞い

condolence money

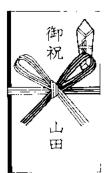
present given when visiting a sick person (flowers, fruits, etc.)

۵,

數字袋 Special Envelope for Gift of Money
There are several kinds of special envelopes called NOSHIBUKURO.
According to the occasion, a suitable one should be chosen.



for weddings (with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)



for celebrations other than weddings (with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)



for funerals (with black and white ribbon) 24

#### IV. Grammar Explanation

#### くれます

You learned that  $\delta$  if  $\delta$  if means "give" in Lesson 7. This verb cannot be used when somebody else gives something to the speaker or the speaker's family, etc. ( $\times$   $\delta$   $\delta$   $\delta$  if  $\delta$  is used. In this case  $\delta$  is used.

- ① わたしは 佐藤さんに 花を あげました。 I gave flowers to Ms. Sato.
- ② 佐藤さんは わたしに クリスマスカードを くれました。 Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.
- ③ 佐藤さんは 妹に お菓子を くれました。 Ms. Sato gave candies to my younger sister.

## 2. | あげます | もらいます | くれます |

sitest, tsitest and sitest are also used to refer to the giving and receiving of actions as well as those of things. They indicate who is doing that act for whom, while also expressing a sense of goodwill or gratitude. In this case, the act is expressed by the  $\tau$ -form.

#### 1) Vて-form あげます

V て-form あげます indicates that one does something for somebody with a sense of goodwill.

④ わたしは 木村さんに 本を 貸して あげました。

I lent Ms. Kimura a book.

- ⑤ タクシーを 呼びましょうか。 Shall I call a taxi for you? (L. 14)
- ⑥ 手伝いましょうか。 May I help you? (L. 14)

24

#### 2) **Vて-form** もらいます |

⑦ わたしは 山田さんに 図書館の 電話番号を 教えて もらいました。

Mr. Yamada told me the telephone number of the library.

This expression conveys a sense of gratitude on the part of those who receive a favor.

#### 3) **Vて-form** くれます

⑧ 母は [わたしに] セーターを 送って くれました。

My mother sent me a sweater.

Like V  $\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{b} \vee \mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{t}$ , this expression also conveys a sense of gratitude on the part of those who receive a favor. The difference is that V  $\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{b} \vee \mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{t}$  has the receiver of the act as the subject of the sentence, while V  $\mathcal{T}$ -form  $\mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf{t}$  has the actor as the subject of the sentence, implying the actor (the subject) voluntarily takes the action. The receiver of the act in the latter case is often the speaker and  $\mathbf{t}$   $\mathbf$ 

#### 3. N (person)が V

⑤ すてきな ネクタイですね。 That's a nice tie, isn't it?

…ええ、佐藤さんが くれました。 …Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me.

You present a topic, saying  $\dagger \tau \in \mathcal{T}$   $\dot{\tau} \neq 0$   $\forall \tau \neq 1$ . Responding to it, your partner in conversation gives a piece of information on the topic which is unknown to you,  $[\exists \mathcal{O} \ \dot{\tau} \neq 0$   $\forall \tau \neq 1$   $\forall \tau \neq 1$   $\forall \tau \neq 1$ . The subject of the sentence giving new information is indicated by  $\dot{\tau}$ .

#### 4. Interrogative f ∨

You learned that when the subject is questioned, it is indicated by  $\delta^{\epsilon}$  in  $\delta^{\epsilon}$  is  $\delta^{\epsilon}$  in  $\delta^{\epsilon}$ 

⑩ だれが 手伝いに 行きますか。 Who will go to give him a hand? …カリナさんが 行きます。 …Ms. Karina will.

24

## Lesson 25

#### I. Vocabulary

 think, consider arrive [at the station]

study abroad grow old

いなか たいしかん グループ チャンス 田舎 大使館 countryside, hometown embassy group chance

おく

億

hundred million

もし [~たら] いくら [~ても] if  $\sim$  however  $\sim$ , even if  $\sim$ 

25

△会話♪ 転勤

頑張ります I どうぞ お芫気で。

transfer (~ L # 7: be transferred to another office) thing, matter (~のこと: thing about ~)

一杯 飲みましょう。 Let's have a drink together.

[いろいろ] お世話に なりました。 Thank you for everything you have done thing, matter (~O C &: thing about ~)

for me. do one's best

Best of luck. (said when expecting a long separation)

#### **Translation** II.

#### Sentence Patterns

- 1. If it rains, I will not go out.
- 2. Even if it rains, I will go out.

#### Example Sentences

- 1. If you had a hundred million yen, what would you like to do?
  - ... I would want to build a computer software company.
- 2. What will you do if your friend doesn't come at the time he promised? ··· I will go home immediately.
- 3. That new shoe shop has a lot of good shoes.
  - --- Does it? If their prices are reasonable, I would like to buy some.
- 4. Do I have to submit the report by tomorrow?
  - ... No. If it's not possible, submit it on Friday.
- 5. Have you thought of a name for your baby yet?
  - ... Yes. If it is a boy, he will be named "Hikaru," and if it is a girl, she will be named "Aya."
- 6. Will you start work straightaway after you graduate from university?
  - ... No, I want to travel to various countries for about one year.
- 7. Excuse me, ma'am. But I don't understand the meaning of this word.
  - ... Did you check it in the dictionary?
  - Yes, I did. I still don't get it.
- Japanese people are fond of traveling in groups, aren't they?
  - ···Yes, they are, because it is economical.

No matter how economical it is, I don't like group tours.

#### Conversation

#### Thank you for having been kind to me

Congratulations! You are going to be transferred. Yamada:

Miller: Thank you.

When you leave for Tokyo, we will miss you. Kimura:

Don't forget about Osaka after you go to Tokyo.

Of course. Ms. Kimura, if you have time, please come to Miller:

Tokyo.

Mr. Miller, when you come to Osaka, give me a call. Santos:

Let's have a drink.

I'd love to. Miller:

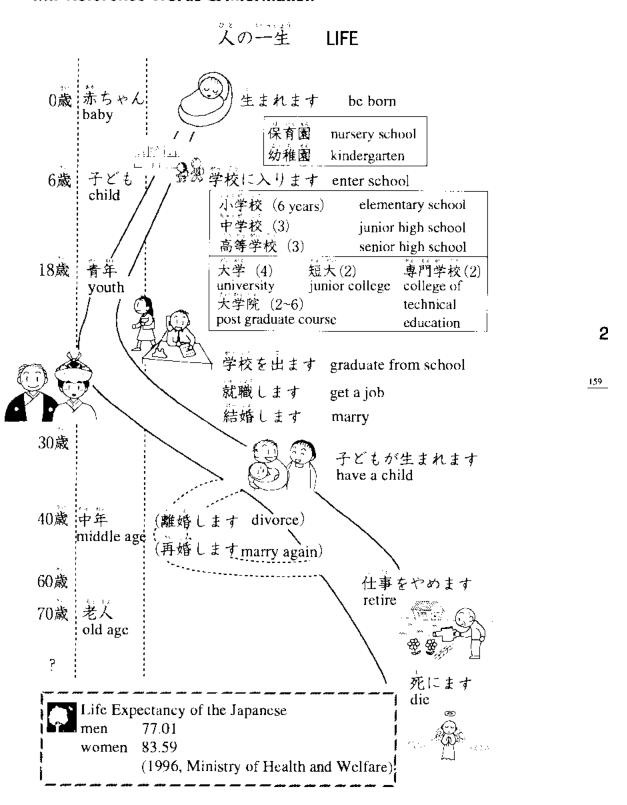
Thank you very much, all of you, for having been kind to me.

Please take care of yourself and do your best. Sato:

Yes, I will do my best. Best of luck, all of you. Miller:

25

#### **IIII. Reference Words & Information**



#### IV. Grammar Explanation

#### 1. plain past form 5. ~ If...

When b is attached to the past tense plain form of verbs, adjectives, etc., it changes the preceding clause into a conditional expression. When a speaker wants to state his opinion, situation, request, etc., in the conditional, this pattern is used.

① お金が あったら、旅行します。

If I had money, I would travel.

② 時間が なかったら、テレビを 覚ません。

If I don't have time, I will not watch TV.

③ 安かったら、パソコンを 買いたいです。

If it's inexpensive, I want to buy a personal computer.

④ 暇だったら、手伝って ください。

If you are free, please give me a hand.

⑤ いい 天気だったら、散歩しませんか。

If it's fine, won't you take a walk with me?

#### 2. Vt.-form b. ~ When.../After...

This pattern is used to express that a certain action will be done or a certain situation will appear when a matter, action or state which is sure to happen in the future has been completed or achieved. The main sentence is always in the present tense.

⑥ 10時に なったら、出かけましょう。

Let's go out when it gets to ten.

⑦ うちへ 帰ったら、すぐ シャワーを 浴びます。

I take a shower soon after I return home.

3. V 
$$\mathcal{T}$$
-form  $V$ -adj  $(\sim \mathcal{V}) \rightarrow \sim \langle \mathcal{T} \rangle$   $t \sim t \sim t$  Even if...  $V$ 

This expression is used to present a reverse condition. Contrary to plain past form b,  $\sim$ , this expression is used when an action which is expected to be taken or an event which is expected to happen naturally under the given circumstances does not materialize or a thing turns out in a way opposite to a socially accepted idea.

25

- ® 雨が 降っても、洗濯します。 Even if it rains, I'll do the laundry.
- ⑨ 安くても、わたしは グループ旅行が 嫌いです。 Even if group tours are inexpensive, I don't like them.
- 10 使利でも、パソコンを 使いません。 Even if a personal computer is useful, I won't use it.
- ① 日曜日でも、働きます。 Even if it is Sunday, I will work.

## 4. もし and いくら

25

161

- ② もし 1億円 あったら、いろいろな 国を 旅行したいです。 If I had 100 million yen, I would want to travel in various countries.
- ③ いくら 考えても、わかりません。 No matter how much I think, I can't understand this.
- ④ いくら 高くても、買います。 No matter how expensive it is, I will buy it.

## 5. Nが

As mentioned in Lesson 16, 4. [Note], the subject of a subordinate clause is indicated by  $\mathfrak{N}$ . In subordinate clauses using  $f_{\mathfrak{S}}$ ,  $f_{\mathfrak{S}}$ 

- ⑤ 友達が 来る まえに、部屋を 掃除します。
  I will clean my room before my friends come. (L. 18)
- 16 妻が 病気の とき、会社を 休みます。 When my wife is sick, I take a day off work. (L. 23)
- ② 友達が 約束の 時間に 来なかったら、どう しますか。
  If your friend doesn't come on time, what will you do? (L. 25)

# **SUMMARY LESSON**

## l. Particles

<b>1.</b> [/t]		
A: 1) I am Mike Miller.	(Lesson 1)	
2) I get up at six in the morning.	(4)	
3) Cherry blossoms are beautiful.	(8)	
B: 1) What time is it now in New York?	(4)	
<ol><li>On Sunday I went to Nara with a friend.</li></ol>	(6)	
<ol><li>Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.</li></ol>	(10)	
4) Please send the data by fax.	(17)	
2. [ t ]		
A: 1) Maria is Brazilian, too.	(1)	
2) Please send this parcel, too.	(11)	
3) I like both.	(12)	
4) I have been on a diet many times.	(19)	
B: 1) I did not go anywhere.	(5)	
2) I did not eat anything.	(6)	
3) There was no one.	(10)	163
<b>3.</b> [の]		
A: 1) That person is Mr. Miller of IMC.	(1)	
2) This is a book on computers.	(2)	
3) That is my umbrella.	(2)	
4) This is a Japanese car.	(3)	
5) Did you study last night?	(4)	
6) How are your Japanese studies going?	(8)	
7) There is a picture on the desk.	(10)	
8) Please tell me how to read this Kanji.	(14)	
9) I came from Bandung, Indonesia.	(16)	
B; 1) This bag is Ms. Sato's.	(2)	
2) Where was this camera made?		
···In Japan.	(3)	
C: Is there one a little bigger?	(14)	
4. [を]		
A: 1) I drink juice.	(6)	
2) I am going to travel for a week.	(11)	
3) I will pick up my child at two o'clock.	(13)	

B: 1) I took a day off work yesterday.	(11)
2) I leave home at eight every morning.	(13)
3) I get off the train at Kyoto.	(16)
C: 1) I take a walk in a park every morning.	(13)
2) Please cross at that traffic signal.	(23)
3) Go straight along this street and you will find the station.	(23)
5. [δ <sup>8</sup> ]	(9)
A: 1) I like Italian food.	(9)
2) Mr. Miller is good at cooking.	(9)
3) I understand Japanese a little.	(9)
4) Do you have any small change?	(11)
5) I have two children.	•
6) I want a personal computer.	(13)
7) Can you ski?	(18)
8) I need a tape recorder.	(20)
B: 1) There is a man over there.	(10)
2) There is a picture on the desk.	(10)
3) There will be a festival in Kyoto next month.	(21)
C: 1) Tokyo has a big population.	(12)
2) Mr. Santos is tall.	(16)
3) I have a sore throat.	(17)
D: 1) Which is faster, a bus or a train?	(12)
··· A train is faster.	(12)
2) Baseball is the most interesting of all the sports.	(12)
E: 1) It is raining now.	(14)
2) Touch this, and the water will come out.	(23)
3) The volume is low.	(23)
F: 1) I am going to go and have a meal after the concert is over.	(16)
2) What will you do if your friend does not come on time?	(25)
3) When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.	(23)
4) Which is the picture that Ms. Karina drew?	(22)
G: 1) Ms. Sato gave me wine.	(24)
2) Who paid for you?	(24)
<b>6.</b> [(C]	
A: 1) I get up at six o'clock in the morning.	(4)
2) I came to Japan on March 25th.	(5)
B: 1) I gave some flowers to Ms. Kimura.	(7)
2) I write Christmas cards to my family and friends.	(7)

C: 1) I received a gift from Mr. Santos.	(7)	
2) I borrowed a book from a person in the company.	(7)	
D: 1) There is a picture on the desk.	(10)	
2) My family is in New York.	(10)	
3) Maria lives in Osaka.	(15)	
E: 1) I will meet a friend tomorrow.	(6)	
2) Have you already got accustomed to living in Japan?	(8)	
3) Let's go in that coffee shop.	(13)	
4) Please sit here.	(15)	
5) I take a train from Umeda.	(16)	
Please write your name here.	(14)	
7) Touch this, and the water will come out.	(23)	
F: 1 play tennis once a week.	(11)	
G: 1) I came to Japan to study economics.	(13)	
2) I will go to Kyoto for cherry blossom viewing.	(13)	
H: Teresa became ten.	(19)	
7. [^]		
1) I will go to Kyoto with a friend.	(5)	
2) I will go to France to study cooking.	(13)	
3) Please turn right at that traffic light.	(14)	165
	(- ,	
<b>8.</b> [で]	_	
A: 1) I go home by taxi.	(5)	
2) I send the data by fax.	(7)	
3) Do you write reports in Japanese?	(7)	
B: 1) I buy a newspaper at the station.	(6)	
2) In July there is a festival in Kyoto.	(21)	
C: I like summer the best of the year.	(12)	
<b>9.</b> [۲]		
A: 1) I came to Japan with my family.	(5)	
2) Ms. Sato is talking with the department chief in the meeting room.	(14)	
B: 1) I have Saturdays and Sundays off.	(4)	
2) The book store is between a florist's and a supermarket.	(10)	
3) Which is more interesting, football or baseball?	(12)	
C: 1) I think it will rain tomorrow.	(21)	
2) The prime minister said that he would go to America next month.	(21)	
10. [や]		
There are old letters, pictures and things in the box.	(10)	

<b>11.</b> [から] [まで]	
A: 1) I work from nine to five.	(4)
2) The bank is open from nine to three.	(4)
3) I worked until ten last night.	(4)
B: 1) Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom.	(10)
<ol><li>It takes four hours to fly from my country to Japan.</li></ol>	(11)
3) Shall I come and get you at the station?	(14)
<b>12.</b> [までに]	
I have to return the books by Saturday.	(17)
13. [より]	
China is bigger than Japan.	(12)
<b>14</b> . 「でも]	
Shall we drink a glass of beer or something?	(21)
15. [か]	
A: 1) Is Mr. Santos Brazilian?	(1)
2) Is it a mechanical pencil or a ballpoint pen?	(2)
3) Shall we go and see a film together?	(6)
B: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya store?	
···Yunyu-ya store? It's in that building.	(10)
C: Is this umbrella yours?	
···No, it isn't. It's Mr. Schmidt's.	
I see.	(2)
<b>16</b> . [ね]	
1) I studied until twelve last night, too.	
···That's tough, isn't it?	(4)
2) That spoon looks nice, doesn't it?	(7)
3) Well, ···let me see, it's 871-6813.	
···871-6813, right?	(4)
4) You see the man over there. Who is he?	(10)
<b>17.</b> [‡]	
Does this train go to Koshien?	
···No. The next local train does.	(5)

# II. How to Use the Forms

1. [ます-form]			
ます-formませんか	Won't you have some tea with me? (L	esson 6)	
ます-formましょう	Let's meet at five.	(6)	
ます-formたいです	I want to buy a camera.	(13)	
ます-formに いきます	I go to see a movie.	(13)	
ます-formましょうか	Shall I call a taxi for you?	(14)	
2. [て-form]			
て-form ください	Please lend me your ballpoint pen.	(14)	
て-form います	Ms. Sato is now talking with Mr. Miller.	(14)	
	Maria lives in Osaka.	(15)	
て-formも いいです	May I smoke?	(15)	
て-formは いけません	Don't take photographs in the museum.	(15)	
て-formから、~	After I finish work, I go swimming.	(16)	
て-form、て-form、 $\sim$	In the morning, I go jogging, take a show	ver,	
	then go to the office.	(16)	
て-form あげます	I lend a CD to Mr. Miller.	(24)	
て-form もらいます	Ms. Sato took me to Osaka Castle.	(24)	167
て-form くれます	Mr. Yamada took me in his car.	(24)	
3. [ない-form]			
ない-formないで ください	Please do not take photographs here.	(17)	
	You must show your passport.	(17)	
ない-formなくても いいです	You don't need to take off your shoes.	(17)	
4. [dictionary form]	*		
dictionary form ことができます	I can play the piano.	(18)	
dictionary form ことです	My hobby is watching movies.	(18)	
dictionary form まえに、~	I read a book before going to bed.	(18)	
dictionary form $ au_+$ $\sim$	Turn to the right, and you'll find a post		
	office.	(23)	
5. [た-form]			
た-form ことが あります	I have been to Hokkaido.	(19)	
た-formり、た-formりします	On my holidays I play tennis, take walk	s	
	and so forth.	(19)	

6. [plain form]		
plain formと おもいます	I think that Mr. Miller has already gone home	:.(21)
	I think that things are expensive in Japan.	(21)
	I think that family is the most important	
	thing.	(21)
plain formと いいます	My brother said that he would return by ten.	.(21)
verb ) ,	Tomorrow you will go to the party, won't you'	?(21)
U-adjective plain form	The morning rush hours are terrible, aren't they?	(21)
verb い-adjective plain form な-adjective plain form noun	Personal computers are useful, aren't they?	(21)
noun ~#	He is American, isn't he?	(21)
verb plain form noun	This is the cake that I made.	(22)
7. verb plain form	When I read a paper, I put on my glasses.	(23)
( ) adioativa	When I am steepy, I drink coffee.	(23)
な-adjective な とき、~	When I have time, I watch video tapes.	(23)
noun Ø	When it rains, I take a taxi.	(23)
8. plain form past $b$ $\sim$	If I have a personal computer, it'll be	
	convenient.	(25)
	If the personal computer is cheap, I will	
	buy it.	(25)
	If it's simple to use, I will buy it.	(25)
	If it's fine, I'll take a walk.	(25)
9. verb T-form	Though I've checked in the dictionary, I	
ļ	don't understand its meaning.	(25)
い-adjective $\sim$ 〈て $_{f t}$ 、 $\sim$ な-adjective で	Even if personal computers are cheap, I	
/ € . ~	won't buy one.	(25)
な-adjective で	Even if you don't like it, you should eat it.	(25)
noun で	He works even on Sundays.	(25)

# III. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions

1.	みんな	The foreign teachers are all Americans. (I	Lesson 11)	
	ぜんぶ	I have finished all my homework.	(24)	
	たくさん	I have a lot of work.	(9)	
	とても	It is very cold in Beijing.	(8)	
	よく	Mr. Wang understands English well.	(9)	
	だいたい	Teresa understands most Hiragana.	(9)	
	すこし	Maria understands Katakana a little.	(9)	
	ちょっと	Let's take a rest for a while.	(6)	
	もう すこし	Don't you have one a little bit smaller?	(14)	
	もう	Make one more copy, please.	(14)	
	ずっと	There are a lot more people in Tokyo than in New '	York. (12)	
	いちばん	I like tempura best of all Japanese dishes.	(12)	
		Notebooks are on the top of that shelf.	(10)	
2.	いつも	I always have lunch in the university dining hall.	(6)	
	ときどき	I sometimes eat at a restaurant.	(6)	
	よく	Mr. Miller often goes to coffee shops.	(22)	
	はじめて	Yesterday I ate sushi for the first time.	(12)	
	また	Please come again tomorrow.	(14)	169
	もういちど	Once again, please.	(11)	
3.	いま	It is now ten past two.	(4)	
	すぐ	Please send the report at once.	(14)	
	もう	I have already bought my Shinkansen ticket.	(7)	
		It's eight o'clock now, isn't it?	(8)	
	まだ	Have you had lunch?		
		···No, not yet.	(7)	
	これから	I'm going to take lunch from now.	(7)	
	そろそろ	It is almost time for me to leave.	(8)	
	あとで	I will come later.	(14)	
	まず	First, push this button.	(16)	
	つぎに	Next, insert the card.	(16)	
	さいきん	Recently Japanese football teams have become stro	onger. (21)	
4.	じぶんで	l cooked all the dishes for the party by myself.	(24)	
	ひとりで	l go to the hospital alone.	(5)	
	みんなで	We will go to Kyoto all together tomorrow.	(20)	
	いっしょに	Won't you drink some beer with me?	(6)	
	べつべつに	Please charge us separately.	(13)	
1				
	いっしょに	Won't you drink some beer with me?	(6)	

	ほかに	Who will come to help you other than me?	(24
	はやく	I'll go home early.	(9
	ゆっくり	Please speak slowly.	(14
		Have a good rest, today.	(17
	だんだん	It will get hotter and hotter from now on.	(19
	まっすぐ	Please go straight.	(14
5.	あまり	That dictionary is not very good.	(8
	ぜんぜん	I don't understand Indonesian at all.	(9
	なかなか	You can hardly ever see horses in Japan.	(18
	いちども	I have never eaten sushi.	(19
	ぜひ	I am eager to go to Hokkaido.	(18
	たぶん	I think Mr. Miller probably doesn't know.	(21
	きっと	I am sure it will be fine tomorrow.	(21
	ŧl	If I had one hundred million yen, I would like to form	n my
		own company.	(25
	いくら	However cheap group tours are, I don't like them.	(25
6.	とくに	In that film, the father, especially, acted well.	(15
	じつは	I am on a diet actually.	(19
	ほんとうに	I think food really costs a lot in Japan.	(21
	もちろん	I think Brazil will win the game, of course.	(21

# IV. Various Conjunctions

1.	そして	Subways in Tokyo are clean and convenient. (Less-	on 8)	
	~で	Nara is a quiet and beautiful city.	(16)	
	~くて	This personal computer is light and handy.	(16)	
	それから	Send this by special delivery, please. And this parcel, too.	(11)	
	~たり	On holidays I play tennis, go on walks and so on.	(19)	
	$\sim$ 1 $^{\circ}$	Excuse me, but lend me a ballpoint pen, please.	(14)	
2.	それから	I studied Japanese, and then saw a movie.	(6)	
	~てから	We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over.	(16)	
	~て、~て	In the morning I jog, take a shower, and go to the office.	(16)	
	~まえに	I write in my diary before going to bed.	(18)	
	~とき	When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.	(23)	
3.	から	I don't go anywhere, because I don't have the time.	(9)	
	ですから	Today is my wife's birthday. So I must go home early.	(17)	
	~か	'The Seven Samurai' is an old but interesting movie.	(8)	
	でも	The tour was fun. But I got tired.	(12)	
	~けど	This curry is hot but tasty.	(20)	
	しかし	Dancing is good for the health, so I will practice it every day from tomorrow.		.171
		···But excessive practice is not good for one's health.	(19)	
5.	じゃ	This is an Italian wine.		
		···Well, I'll buy it.	(3)	
	~ <b>∠</b>	Push this button, and change will come out.	(23)	
	~たら	If it rains, I will not go out.	(25)	
6.	~ても	Even if it rains, I will go out.	(25)	

# **APPENDICES**

# I. Numerals

<ul> <li>ゼロ、れい</li> <li>100 ひゃく</li> <li>1 いち</li> <li>200 にひゃく</li> <li>200 にひゃく</li> <li>200 にひゃく</li> <li>200 にひゃく</li> <li>200 にひゃく</li> <li>200 たびゃく</li> <li>200 ななひゃく</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 たせん</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 ななせん</li> <li>200 たけのう</li> <li>2000 ななせん</li> <li>2000 なななななななななななななななななななななななななななななななななな</li></ul>	
2 に       300 さんびゃく         3 さん       400 よんひゃく         4 よん、し       500 ごひゃく         5 ご       600 ろっぴゃく         6 ろく       700 ななひゃく         7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14 じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうはち       9,000 きゅうせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       10,000 いちまん         10 よんじゅう       1,000,000 せんまん         40 よんじゅう       1,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう、しちじゅう       100,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5 じゅうななしゅうななしゅうしちじゅうないちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなるのののののののののののののののののののののののののののののののののののの	
2 に       300 さんびゃく         3 さん       400 よんひゃく         4 よん、し       500 ごひゃく         5 ご       600 ろっぴゃく         6 ろく       700 ななひゃく         7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         10 じゅう       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14 じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうはち       9,000 きゅうせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       100,000 いちまん         10 よんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         40 よんじゅう       100,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       100,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなも         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんは	
3 さん       400 よんひゃく         4 よん、し       500 ごひゃく         5 ご       600 ろっぴゃく         6 ろく       700 ななひゃく         7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14 じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         16 じゅうろく       7,000 ななせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       10,000 いちまん         30 さんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         40 よんじゅう       1,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなないちおく         90 きゅうじゅう       17.5 じゅうなないちおく         90 きゅうじゅう       17.5 じゅうなないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないちないち	
4 よん、し       500 ごひゃく         5 ご       600 ろっぴゃく         6 ろく       700 ななひゃく         7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 おくせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうおく       7,000 ななせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       100,000 じゅうまん         30 さんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         40 よんじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 いちおく         60 ろくじゅう       100,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうななりきゅうじゅう         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなないてんに         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
5 ご       600 ろっぴゃく         6 ろく       700 ななひゃく         7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         16 じゅうろく       7,000 ななせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうはち       9,000 きゅうせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       100,000 いちまん         30 さんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         40 よんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうななりきゅうじゅう         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうななり         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
6       ろく       700 ななひゃく         7       なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8       はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9       きゅう、く       1,000 せん         10       じゅう       1,000 せん         11       じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12       じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13       じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000 ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18       じゅうさな、じゅうしち       9,000 きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20       にじゅう       10,000 いちまん         20       にじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000 せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000 いちおく         80       はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
7 なな、しち       800 はっぴゃく         8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         10 じゅう       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14 じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         16 じゅうろく       7,000 ななせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうはち       9,000 きゅうせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       10,000 いちまん         30 さんじゅう       100,000 ひゃくまん         40 よんじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなな         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
8 はち       900 きゅうひゃ         9 きゅう、く       1,000 せん         10 じゅう       1,000 せん         11 じゅういち       2,000 にせん         12 じゅうに       3,000 さんぜん         13 じゅうさん       4,000 よんせん         14 じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000 ごせん         15 じゅうご       6,000 ろくせん         16 じゅうろく       7,000 ななせん         17 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000 はっせん         18 じゅうなな、じゅうしち       9,000 きゅうせん         19 じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000 いちまん         20 にじゅう       100,000 いちまん         100,000 いちまん       100,000,000 せんまん         50 ごじゅう       100,000,000 せんまん         50 ろくじゅう       100,000,000 いちおく         80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなな         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
10       じゅう       1,000       せん         11       じゅういち       2,000       にせん         12       じゅうに       3,000       さんぜん         13       じゅうさん       4,000       よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000       ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         19       じゅうきゅうく       10,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       いちまん         40       よんじゅう       100,000       ひゃくまん         40       よんじゅう       100,000,000       いちまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなも         80       はちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなも         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんは	٠ <
11       じゅういち       2,000       にせん         12       じゅうに       3,000       さんぜん         13       じゅうさん       4,000       よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000       ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       100,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       ひゃくまん         40       よんじゅう       100,000,000       せんまん         40       よんじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         80       はちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなも         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
12       じゅうに       3,000       さんぜん         13       じゅうさん       4,000       よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000       ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       100,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       ひゃくまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなち         80       はちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなち         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
12       じゅうに       3,000       さんぜん         13       じゅうさん       4,000       よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000       ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       100,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       ひゃくまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなち         80       はちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなち         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
13       じゅうさん       4,000       よんせん         14       じゅうよん、じゅうし       5,000       ごせん         15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       ひゃくまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         80       はちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
15       じゅうご       6,000       ろくせん         16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
16       じゅうろく       7,000       ななせん         17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         80       はちじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
17       じゅうなな、じゅうしち       8,000       はっせん         18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         30       さんじゅう       1,000,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
18       じゅうはち       9,000       きゅうせん         19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく       10,000       いちまん         20       にじゅう       100,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       1,000,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       10,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       100,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90       きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
19       じゅうきゅう、じゅうく         20       にじゅう       10,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       1,000,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       10,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         80       はちじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	,
20       にじゅう       10,000       いちまん         30       さんじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       10,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         80       はちじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
30       さんじゅう       100,000       じゅうまん         40       よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50       ごじゅう       10,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         80       はちじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	
40 よんじゅう       1,000,000       ひゃくまん         50 ごじゅう       10,000,000       せんまん         60 ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70 ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83       れいてんに	,
50       ごじゅう       10,000,000       せんまん         60       ろくじゅう       100,000,000       いちおく         70       ななじゅう、しちじゅう       17.5       じゅうなな         80       はちじゅう       0.83       れいてんは	,
60 ろくじゅう 100,000,000 いちおく 70 ななじゅう、しちじゅう 80 はちじゅう 17.5 じゅうなな 90 きゅうじゅう 0.83 れいてんに	
70 ななじゅう、しちじゅう 80 はちじゅう 17.5 じゅうなな 90 きゅうじゅう 0.83 れいてんに	
80 はちじゅう       17.5 じゅうなる         90 きゅうじゅう       0.83 れいてんに	
90 きゅうじゅう 0.83 れいてんに	こてんご
	はちさん
ــ مداد عد ـــ	
$\frac{1}{2}$ $(z, y, \ell, \theta)$	いち
2	
$\frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{3}{4}}$ にぶんの	)さん

# II. Expressions of time

day	morning	night
おととい	おとといのあさ	おとといの ばん
the day before yesterday	the morning before last	the night before last
きのう	きのうのあさ	きのうのばん
yesterday	yesterday morning	last night
きょう	けさ	こんばん
today	this morning	tonight
あした	あしたのあさ	あしたのばん
tomorrow	tomorrow morning	tomorrow night
あさって	あさってのあさ	あさっての ばん
the day after tomorrow	the morning after next	the night after next
まいにち	まいあさ	まいばん
every day	every morning	every night

week	month	year
せんせんしゅう	せんせんげつ	おととし
(にしゅうかんまえ)	(にかげつまえ)	
the week before last	the month before last	the year before last
せんしゅう	せんげつ	きょねん
last week	last month	last year
こんしゅう	こんげつ	ことし
this week	this month	this year
らいしゅう	らいげつ	らいねん
next week	next month	next year
さらいしゅう	さらいげつ	さらいねん
the week after next	the month after next	the year after next
まいしゅう	まいつき	まいとし、まいねん
every week	every month	every year

## Telling time

	ining thine		
	o'clock 一時		minute 一分
1	いちじ	1	いっぷん
2	にじ	2	にふん
3	さんじ	3	さんぶん
4	よじ	4	よんぷん
5	ごじ	5	ごふん
6	ろくじ	6	ろっぷん
7	しちじ	7	ななふん、しちふん
8	はちじ	8	はっぷん
9	くじ	9	きゅうふん
10	じゅうじ	10	じゅっぷん、じっぷん
11	じゅういちじ	15	じゅうごふん
12	じゅうにじ	30	さんじゅっぷんさんじっぷんはん
?	なんじ	3	なんぷん

the days of	the week
~-8	18
にちようび	Sunday
げつようび	Monday
かようび	Tuesday
すいようび	Wednesday
もくようび	Thursday
きんようび	Friday
どようび	Saturday
なんようび	what day

			date		
	month 一月		day	- E	]
1	いちがつ	1	ついたち	17	じゅうしちにち
2	にがつ	2	ふつか	18	じゅうはちにち
3	さんがつ	3	みっか	19	じゅうくにち
4	しがつ	4	よっか	20	はつか
5	ごがつ	5	いつか	21	にじゅういちにち
6	ろくがつ	6	むいか	22	にじゅうににち
7	しちがつ	7	なのか	23	にじゅうさんにち
8	はちがつ	8	ようか	24	にじゅうよっか
9	くがつ	9	ここのか	25	「にじゅうごにち
10	じゅうがつ	10	とおか	26	にじゅうろくにち
11	じゅういちがつ	11	じゅういちにち	[27]	にじゅうしちにち
12	じゅうにがつ	12	じゅうににち	28	にじゅうはちにち
?	なんがつ	13	じゅうさんにち	29	にじゅうくにち
		14	じゅうよっか	30	さんじゅうにち
		15	じゅうごにち	31	さんじゅういちにち
		16	じゅうろくにち	3	なんにち

# III. Expressions of period

	tim	e duration
	hour -時間	minute 一分
1	いちじかん	いっぷん
2	にじかん	にふん
3	さんじかん	さんぶん
4	よじかん	よんぶん
5	ごじかん	ごふん
6	ろくじかん	ろっぷん
7	ななじかん、しちじかん	ななふん、しちふん
8	はちじかん	はっぷん
9	くじかん	きゅうふん
10	じゅうじかん	じゅっぷん、じっぷん
	なんじかん	なんぶん

		ре	riod	
	day — 日	week 一週間	month 一か月	year - 年
1	いちにち	いっしゅうかん	いっかげつ	いちねん
2	ふつか	にしゅうかん	にかげつ	にねん
3	みっか	さんしゅうかん	さんかげつ	さんねん
4	よっか	よんしゅうかん	よんかげつ	よねん
5	いつか	ごしゅうかん	ごかげつ	ごねん
6	むいか	ろくしゅうかん	ろっかげつ、はんとし	ろくねん
7	なのか	ななしゅうかん、しちしゅうかん	ななかげつ、しちかげつ	ななねん、しちねん
8	ようか	はっしゅうかん	はちかげつ、はっかげつ	はちねん
9	ここのか	きゅうしゅうかん	きゅうかげつ	きゅうねん
10	とおか	じゅっしゅうかんじっしゅうかん	じゅっかげつ、じっかげつ	じゅうねん
3	なんにち	なんしゅうかん	なんかげつ	なんねん

	<del>.</del>			
	things	P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P	the in 1	thin & flat things
		-人	- 番	- 枚
-	ひとつ	ひとり	いちばん	いちまい
2	ふたつ	ふたり	にばん	にまい
3	みっつ	さんにん	さんばん	さんまい
4	よっつ	よにん	よんばん	よんまい
5	いつつ	ごにん .	ごばん	ごまい
6	むっつ	ろくにん	ろくばん	ろくまい
7	ななつ	ななにん、しちにん	ななばん	ななまい
8	やっつ	はちにん	はちばん	はちまい
9	ここのつ	きゅうにん	きゅうばん	きゅうまい
10	とお	じゅうにん	じゅうばん	じゅうまい
5	いくつ	なんにん	なんばん	なんまい
			POTE BOOK	
	machines & vehicles	age	books & notebooks	clothes
	- 台	- 歳	— <del>                                     </del>	
1	いちだい	いっさい	いっさつ	いっちゃく
2	にだい	にさい	にさつ	にちゃく
3	さんだい	さんさい	さんさつ	さんちゃく
4	よんだい	よんさい	よんさつ	よんちゃく
ے ا	- " 1 "	~* w	ごさつ	ごちゃく
) )	ごだい	ごさい		
	I.	ろくさい	ろくさつ	ろくちゃく
	ろくだい		ろくさつ ななさつ	ろくちゃく ななちゃく
6 7	ろくだい ななだい はちだい	ろくさい ななさい はっさい	ろくさつ ななさつ はっさつ	ろくちゃく ななちゃく はっちゃく
6 7 8 9	ろくだい ななだい はちだい きゅうだい	ろくさい ななさい はっさい きゅうさい	ろくさつ ななさつ はっさつ きゅうさつ	ろくちゃく ななちゃく はっちゃく きゅうちゃく
6 7 8 9	ろくだい ななだい はちだい きゅうだい	ろくさい ななさい はっさい	ろくさつ ななさつ はっさつ きゅうさつ	ろくちゃく ななちゃく はっちゃく きゅうちゃく

ι	7	7	
L		٠.	

	日月火水水塩 1 1 2 0 4 5 6 0 8 9 0 1 12 13 0 15 16 0 18; 19 20 10 22 23 12 25 26 27 10 29 30 10	\$	11 00	
	frequency	small things	shoes & socks	houses
	- 回		- 足	— <u></u> — 軒
1	いっかい	いっこ	いっそく	いっけん
2	にかい	[C ]	にそく	にけん
3	さんかい	さんこ	さんぞく	さんげん
4	よんかい	よんこ	よんそく	よんけん
5	ごかい	Š 0	ごそく	ごけん
6	ろっかい	ろっこ	ろくそく	ろっけん
7	ななかい	ななこ	ななそく	ななけん
8	はっかい	はっこ	はっそく	はっけん
9	きゅうかい	きゅうこ	きゅうそく	きゅうけん
10	じゅっかいしっかい	じゅっこ、じっこ	じゅっそく、じっそく	じゅっけん、じっけん
5.	なんかい	なんこ	なんぞく	なんげん
	е па с о д па с с о д по с о па па д Да с о с о д			
	floors of a		drinks & so on in	small animals,
	building	thin & long things	cups & glasses	fish & insects
	— 時	- 本	- 杯	<u> </u>
1	いっかい	いっぽん	いっぱい	いっぴき
2	にかい	にほん	にはい	にひき
3	さんがい	さんぼん	さんばい	さんびき
4	よんかい	よんほん	よんはい	よんひき
5		ごほん	ごはい	ごひき
	ろっかい	ろっぽん	ろっぱい	ろっぴき
7	· · ·	0. 0. 110	ななはい	ななひき
8			はっぱい	はっぴき
9	,	- ' ' '	きゅうはい	きゅうひき
10	じゅっかいしっかい	じゅっぽんじっぽん		
?	なんがい	なんぼん	なんばい	なんびき

# V. Conjugation of verbs

# I -group

	ます-form	[	て-form	dictionary form
会います [ともだちに~]	あい	ます	あって	あう
遊びます	あそび	ます	あそんで	あそぶ
洗います	あらい	ます	あらって	あらう
あります	あり	ます	あって	ある
あります	あり	ます	あって	ある
あります [おまつりが~]	あり	# 1	あって	ある
歩きます [みちを~]	あるき	ます	あるいて	あるく
言います	+ (1)	ます	いって	いう
行きます	いき	ます	いって	\·<
急ぎます	いそぎ	ます	いそいで	いそぐ
要ります [ビザが~]	N.J.	ます	いって	いる
動きます [とけいが~]	うごき	ます	うごいて	うごく
歌います	うたい	ます	うたって	うたう
売ります	うり	ます	うって	うる
置きます	おき	ます	おいて	おく
送ります	おくり	ます	おくって	おくる
送ります  ひとを ~]	おくり	ます	おくって	おくる
押します	おし	ます	おして	おす
思います	おもい	ます	おもって	おもう
思い出します	おもいだし	ます	おもいだして	おもいだす
泳ぎます	およぎ	ます	およいで	およぐ
終わります	おわり	ます	おわって	おわる
買います	かい		かって	かう
返します	かえし	ます	かえして	かえす
帰ります	かえり	ます	かえって	かえる
かかります	かかり	ます	かかって	かかる
書きます	かき	ます	かいて	かく
貸します	かし	ます	かして	かす
勝ちます	かち	ます	かって	かつ
かぶります [ぼうしを~]	かぶり	します	かぶって	かぶる

.179	_

とい-form_	! !	た-form	meaning	lesson
あわ	ない	あった	meet [a friend]	6
あそば	ない	あそんだ	enjoy oneself, play	13
あらわ	ない	あらった	wash	18
	ない	あった	have	9
-	ない	あった	exist, be (inanimate things)	10
_	ない	あった	[a festival] be held, take place	21
あるか	ない	あるいた	walk [along a road]	23
いわ	ない	いった	say	21
いか	ない	いった	go	5
いそが	ない	いそいだ	hurry	14
いら	ない	いった	need, require [a visa]	20
うごか	ない	うごいた	[a watch] move, work	23
うたわ。	ない	うたった	sing	18
うら	200	うった	self	15
おか	400	おいた	put	15
おくら	ない	おくった	send	7
おくら	ない	おくった	escort [someone], go with	24
おさ	ない	おした	push, press	16
おもわ	ない	おもった	think -	21
らもいださ	tree	おもいだした	remember, recollect	15
およが	411	およいだ	swim	13
おわら	ない	おわった	finish	4
かわ	ない	かった	buy	6
かえさ	ない	かえした	give back, return	17
かえら	かい	かえった	go home, return	5
かから	ない	かかった	take (referring to time or money)	11
かか	ない	かいた	write, draw, paint	6
かさ	ない	かした	lend	7
かた	ない	かった	win	21
かぶら	ない	かぶった。	put on [a hat, etc.]	22

	ます-form		7-form	dictionary form
聞きます	きき	ます	きいて	きく
聞きます [せんせいに ~]	きき	ます	きいて	きく
切ります	きり	ます	きって	きる
消します	けし	ます	けして	けす
触ります [ドアに~]	さわり	ます	さわって	さわる
知ります	しり	ます	しって	しる
吸います [たばこを~]	すい	ます	すって	すう
住みます	すみ	ます	すんで	すむ
座ります	すわり	ます	すわって	すわる
立ちます	たち	ます	たって	たつ
出します  てがみを~]	. <i>だ</i> し	ます	だして	だす
出します	だし	   # †	だして	だす
出します [レポートを~]	だし	<b>ま</b> ≉	だして	だす
使います	つかい	ます	つかって	つかう
着きます [えきに~]	つき	ます	ついて	つく
作ります、造ります	つくり	ます	つくって	つくる
連れて行きます	つれていき	゠゚゙゙゙ます	つれていって	つれていく
手伝います	てつだい	ます	てつだって	てつだう
泊まります「ホテルに~」	とまり	ます	とまって	とまる
取ります	とり	ます	とって	とる
撮ります [しゃしんを~]	ر ع	ます	とって	とる
取ります  としを~]	(اع	ます	とって	とる
直します	なおし	ます	なおして	なおす
なくします	なくし	ます	なくして	なくす
習います	ならい	ます	ならって	ならう
なります	なり	ます	なって	なる
脱ぎます	ぬぎ	ます	ぬいで	ぬく
登ります  やまに~]	のぼり	ます	のぼって	のぼる
飲みます	のみ	ます	のんで	のむ
飲みます [くすりを~]	のみ	ます	のんで	のむ

ない-form		た-form	meaning	iesson
きか	ない	きいた	hear, listen	6
きか	ない	きいた	ask [a teacher]	23
きら	ない	きった	cut, slice	7
けさ	ない	けした	turn off	14
さわら	ない	さわった	touch [a door]	23
しら	ない	しった	get to know	15
すわ	ない	すった	smoke [a cigarette]	6
すま	ない	すんだ	be going to live	15
すわら	ない	すわった	sit down	15
たた	ない	たった	stand up	15
ださ	ない	だした	send [a letter]	13
ださ	ない	だした	take out, withdraw	16
ださ	ない	だした	hand in [a report]	17
つかわ	ない	つかった	use	15
つか	ない	ついた	arrive [at the station]	25
つくら	ない	つくった	make, produce	15
つれていか	ない	つれていった	take (someone)	24
てつだわ	ない	てつだった	help (with a task)	14
とまら	ない	とまった	stay [at a hotel]	19
とら	ない	とった	take, pass	14
<u>ک</u> کے	ない	とった	take [a photograph]	6
26	ない	とった	grow old	25
なおさ	ない	なおした。	repair, correct	20
なくさ	ない	なくした	lose	17
ならわ	\$11	ならった	learn	7
なら	ない	なった	become	19
<b>お</b> なが	ない	めいだ	take off (clothes, shoes, etc.)	17
のぼら	ない	のぼった	climb [a mountain]	19
のま	ない	のんだ	drink	6
のま	ない	のんだ	take [medicine]	17

	ます-form		7-form	dictionary form
乗ります「でんしゃに~」	のり	ます	のって	のる
入ります [きっさてんに~]	はいり	ます	はいって	はいる
入ります [だいがくに ~	はいり	ます	はいって	はいる
入ります [おふろに~]	はいり	ます	はいって	はいる
はきます [くつを~]	はき	ます	はいて	はく
働きます	はたらき	ます	はたらいて	はたらく
弾きます	ひき	ます	ひいて	ひく
引きます	ひき	ます	ひいて	ひく
降ります [あめが~]	30)	ます	ふって	ふる
払います	はらい	ます	はらって	はらう
話します	はなし	ます	はなして	はなす
曲がります「みぎへ ~]	まがり	ます	まがって	まがる
待ちます	まち	ます	まって	まつ
回します	まわし	ます	まわして	まわす
持ちます	もち	ます	もって	もつ
持って行きます	もっていき	ます	もっていって	もっていく
もらいます	もらい	ます	もらって	もらう
役に立ちます	やくにたち	ます	やくにたって	やくにたつ
休みます	やすみ	ます	やすんで	やすむ
休みます [かいしゃを ~]	やすみ	ます	やすんで	やすむ
呼びます	よび	ます	よんで	1.3
読みます	よみ	ます	よんで	11
わかります	わかり	ます	わかって	わかる
渡ります [はしを~]	わたり	ます	わたって	わたる

\_ ...182

			,		. — —
	ない-form		た-form	meaning	lesson
	のら	ない	のった	ride, get on [a train]	16
1	はいら	ない	はいった	enter [a coffee shop]	13
	はいら	ない	はいった	enter [university]	16
	はいら	ない	はいった	take [a bath]	17
	はか	ない	はいた	put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]	22
	はたらか	ない	はたらいた	work	4
	ひか	ない	ひいた	play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.)	18
	ひか	ない	ひいた	pull	23
	3.6	ない	ふった	rain	14
	はらわ	ない	はらった	pay	17
	はなさ	ない	はなした	speak, talk	14
	まがら	ない	まがった	turn [to the right]	14
	また	ない	まった	wait	14
	まわさ	ない	まわした	turn	23
	もた	ない	もった	hold	14
	もっていか	ない	もっていった	take (something)	17
	もらわ	ない	もらった	receive	7
	やくにたた	ない	やくにたった	be useful	21
	やすま	ない	やすんだ	take a rest, take a holiday	4
	やすま	ない	やすんだ	take a day off [work]	11
	よば	ない	よんだ	call	14
	よま	ない	よんだ	read	6
	わから	ない	わかった	understand	9
	わたら	ない	わたった	cross [a bridge]	23
				<u> </u>	

183....

	ます-form		て-form	dictionary form
開けます	あけ	ます	あけて	あける
あげます	あげ	ます	あげて	あげる
集めます	あつめ	ます	あつめて	あつめる
浴びます [シャワーを ~]	あび	ます	あびて	あびる
います	( )	ます	いて	いる
います [こどもが~]	( )	ます	いて	いる
います [にほんに~]	()	ます	いて	いる
入れます	\\name{\pi}	ます	いれて	いれる
いれます [コーヒーを~]	· 111	ます	いれて	いれる
生まれます	うまれ	ます	うまれて	うまれる
起きます	おき	ます	おきて	おきる
教えます	おしえ	ます	おしえて	おしえる
教えます [じゅうしょを~]	おしえ	ます	おしえて	おしえる
覚えます	おぼえ	ます	おぼえて	おぼえる
降ります [でんしゃを~]	おり	ます	おりて	おりる
換えます	かえ	ます	かえて	かえる
変えます	かえ	ます	かえて	かえる
かけます [でんわを~]	かけ	ます	かけて	かける
かけます [めがねを~]	かけ	ます	かけて	かける
借ります	かり	ます	かりて	かりる
考えます	かんがえ	ます	かんがえて	かんがえる
気をつけます「くるまに~」	きをつけ	ます	きをつけて	きをつける
着ます [シャツを~]	*	ます	きて	きる
くれます	< 1	ます	くれて	くれる
閉めます	しめ	ます	しめて	しめる
調べます	しらべ	ます	しらべて	しらべる
捨てます	すて	ます	すてて	すてる
食べます	たべ	ます	たべて	たべる
足ります	たり	ます	たりて	たりる
疲れます	つかれ	ます	つかれて	つかれる

ない-form	Ì	た-form	meaning	lesson
あけ	ない	あけた	open	14
あげ	ない	あげた	give	7
あつめ	ない	あつめた	collect, gather	18
あび	ない	あびた	take [a shower]	16
<b>(</b> )	ない	いた	exist, be (animate things)	10
<b>(</b> )	ない	いた	have [a child]	11
<b>(</b> )	ない	いた	stay, be [in Japan]	11
いれ	ない	いれた	put in, insert	16
いれ	ない	いれた	make [coffee]	24
うまれ	ない	うまれた	be born	22
おき	ない	おきた	get up, wake up	4
おしえ	ない	おしえた	teach	7
おしえ	ない	おしえた	tell [an address]	14
おぼえ	ない	おぼえた	memorize	17
おり	ない	おりた	get off [a train]	16
かえ	ない	かえた	exchange, change	18
かえ	ない	かえた	change	23
かけ	ない	かけた	make [a telephone call]	7
かけ	200	かけた	put on [glasses]	22
かり	400	かりた	borrow	7
かんがえ	ない	かんがえた	think, consider	25
きをつけ	1 200	きをつけた	pay attention [to cars], take care	23
*	ない	きた	put on [shirt, etc.]	22
< 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1 < 1	ない	くれた	give (mc)	24
しめ	ない	しめた	close, shut	14
しらべ	ない	しらべた	check, investigate	20
すて	ない	すてた	throw away	18
たべ	ない	たべた	cat	6
<i>t=1</i> )	ない	たりた	be enough, be sufficient	21
つかれ	ない	つかれた	get tired	13

l	86	

	ます-form		7-form	dictionary form
つけます	つけ	ます	つけて	つける
出かけます	でかけ	ます	でかけて	でかける
できます	でき	ます	できて	できる
出ます〔きっさてんを~〕	で	ます	でて	でる
出ます [だいがくを ~]	で	ます	でて	でる
出ます [おつりが ~]	で	ます	でて	でる
止めます	とめ	ます	とめて	とめる
寝ます	*1	ます	ねて	ねる
乗り換えます	のりかえ	ます	のりかえて	のりかえる
始めます	はじめ	ます	はじめて	はじめる
負けます	まけ	ます	まけて	まける
見せます	* みせ	ます	みせて	みせる
見ます	J.	ます	みて	みる
迎えます	むかえ	ます	むかえて	むかえる
やめます〔かいしゃを~〕	やめ	ます	やめて	やめる
忘れます	わすれ	ます	わすれて	わすれる

ない-form		た-form	meaning	lesson
つけ	ない	つけた	turn on	14
でかけ	ない	でかけた	go out	17
でき	ない	できた	be able to, can	18
で	ない	でた	go out [of a coffee shop]	13
で	ない	でた	graduate from [university]	16
で	ない	でた	[change] come out	23
とめ	ない	とめた	stop, park	14
扣	ない	ねた	sleep, go to bed	4
のりかえ	ない	のりかえた	change (trains, etc.)	16
はじめ	ない	はじめた	start, begin	14
まけ	ない	まけた	lose, be beaten	21
みせ	ない	みせた	show	14
み	ない	4 t=	see, look at, watch	6
むかえ	ない	むかえた	go to meet, welcome	13
やめ	ない	やめた	quit or retire from [a company],	16
			give up	
わすれ	ない	わすれた	forget	17

	ます-form		て-form	dictionary form
案内します	あんないし		あんないして	あんないする
運転します	うんてんし	± ₹	うんてんして	うんてんする
買い物します	かいものし	ます	かいものして	かいものする
来ます	ŧ	ます	きて	くる
結婚します	けっこんし	まず	けっこんして	けっこんする
見学します	けんがくし	ます	けんがくして	けんがくする
研究します	けんきゅうし	゠゚゙゚゚゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゚゠゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゚゠゙゙゙゙゙゙	けんきゅうして	けんきゅうする
コピーします	コピーし	ます	コピーして	コピーする
散歩します[こうえんを~]	さんぼし	ます	さんぽして	さんぽする
残業します	ざんぎょうし	ます	ざんぎょうして	ざんぎょうする
します	l	ます	して	する
修理します	しゅうりし	ます	しゅうりして	しゅうりする
出張します	しゅっちょうし	ます	しゅっちょうして	しゅっちょうする
紹介します	しょうかいし	ます	しょうかいして	しょうかいする
食事します	しょくじし	ます	しょくじして	
心配します	しんぱいし	ます	しんばいして	しんばいする
説明します	せつめいし	i		
洗濯します	せんたくし	!		
掃除します	そうじし	i		
連れて来ます	つれてき	!		
電話します	でんわし	i		
引っ越しします	ひっこしし	I		
勉強します		!		べんきょうする
持って来ます	もってき	i		
予約します		I	よやくして	
留学します		:		りゅうがくする
練習します	れんしゅうし	ます	れんしゅうして	れんしゅうする

ない-form		た-form	meaning	lesson
あんないし	ない	あんないした	show around, show the way	24
うんてんし	ない	うんてんした	drive	18
かいものし	ない	かいものした	do shopping	13
2	ない	きた	come	5
けっこんし	ない	けっこんした	marry, get married	13
けんがくし	ない	けんがくした	visit some place for study	18
けんきゅうし	ない	けんきゅうした	do research	15
コピーし	ない	コピーした	сору	14
さんぼし	ない	さんぽした	take a walk [in a park]	13
ざんぎょうし	ない	ざんぎょうした	work overtime	17
L	ない	した	do	6
しゅうりし	ない	しゅうりした	repair	20
しゅっちょうし	ない	しゅっちょうした	go on a business trip	17
しょうかいし	ない	しょうかいした	introduce	24
しょくじし	ない	しょくじした	have a meal, dine	13
しんぱいし	ない	しんぱいした	worry	17
せつめいし	ない	せつめいした	explain	24
せんたくし	ない	せんたくした	wash (clothes)	19
そうじし	ない	そうじした	clean (a room)	19
つれてこ	ない	つれてきた	bring (someone)	24
でんわし	ない	でんわした	phone <sup>7</sup>	20
ひっこしし	ない	ひっこしした	move (house)	23
べんきょうし	ない	べんきょうした	study	4
もってこ	ない	もって きた	bring (something)	17
よやくし	ない	よやくした	reserve, book	18
りゅうがくし	ない	りゅうがくした	study abroad	25
れんしゅうし	ない	れんしゅうした	practice	19

#### Contributors

III中よね Yone Tanaka

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center Coordinator of Japanese Language Course

牧野昭子 Akiko Makino

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

The Japan Foundation Japanese-Language Institute, Kansai

重川明美 Akemi Shigekawa

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD, Overseas Training Center

御子神慶子 Keiko Mikogami

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD, Overseas Training Center

古賀千世子 Chiseko Koga

Kobe University International Students Center

Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

石井手尋 Chihiro Ishii

YWCA Teachers' Association

#### Editorial Advisors

石沢弘子 Hiroko Ishizawa

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

豐田宗周 Munechika Toyoda

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

#### Illustrator

田辺澄美

Kiyomi Tanabe

写真提供

©オリオンプレス

栃木県

姫路市

広島県

## みんなの日本語 初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版

1998年3月16日 初版第1刷発行 2000年4月7日 第 4 刷 発 行

編著者 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク

発行者 小川 巌

発 行 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク

〒101-0064 東京都千代田区猿楽町2-6-3(松栄ゼル)

電話 営業 03(3292)5751

編集 03(3292)6521

印 刷 日本印刷株式会社

不許複製

ISBN4-88319-107-9 C0081

落丁・乱丁本はお取替えいたします。

# **スリーエーネットワークの日本語教材** 面格はすべて機可

## 🔃 ] しんにほんごのきそ] シリーズ姉妹版

みんなの日本語 初級 I	本冊 翻訳・文法解説 英語版 翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版 翻訳・文法解説 中国語版 カセットテープ (4巻)	2,500円 2,000円 2,000円 2,000円
みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ	本冊	2,500円
みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ	翻訳・文法解説 英語版	2,000円
みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ	翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版	2,000円
みんなの日本語 初級Ⅱ	カセットテープ (4巻)	6,000円

スリーエーネットワーク 編著

### 好評発売中



話そう 考えよう 初級日本事情 B5判 72頁 1,000円 話そう 考えよう 初級日本事情 教師用 B5型 55頁 800円

福岡日本語センター『日本事情』 ブロジェクト 著

●日本語力はまだまだ。でも「日本を知りたい!」そんな学習者のために。



はじめのいっぽ 英語版 B5 判 208頁 2,233円 はじめのいっぽ ボルトガル語版 B5判 208頁 2,200円 はじめのいっぽ スペイン語版 B5 料 208頁 2,200円 はじめのいっぽ カセットテープ 20分1巻 952円

谷口すみ子・萬浪絵理・稲子あゆみ・萩原弘毅 著

●コミュニケーションを闩滑に進めるテクニックがよくわかる日本語入門テキスト。



日本語初中級 理解から発話へ B5判 本文・語彙220頁 解答・留意点35頁 1.942円 日本語初中級 練習問題 B5判 本文80頁 解答12頁 1,000円 日本語初中級 カセットテープ 90分2巻 3,000円

名古屋YWCA教材作成グループ 著

●中級に進む前段階で日本語の基本的な構造を把握し、運用できる能力を養う。



ビジネスのための日本語 中級 B5判 190頁 2.500円 ビジネスのための日本語 カセットテープ 45分1巻 2,400円

米田隆介,藤井和子,重野美枝,池田広子 蓍

●ビジネスの現場ですぐに役立つ会話表現に焦点を当てたテキスト。

# みんなの日本語

初級工翻訳·文法解説 英語版 English [I]

有1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900年,1900

スリーエーネットワーク